

# **GS-3012/GS-3012F**

*Gigabit Ethernet Switch*

## ***User's Guide***

Version 3.60 (ABM.4, ABN.5)

3/2006

Edition 2

The logo for ZyXEL, featuring the word "ZyXEL" in a bold, blue, sans-serif font. The "y" is lowercase and has a distinctive shape, while "XEL" is uppercase. The letters are closely spaced and have a slight shadow or depth.

# Copyright

Copyright © 2005 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

## **Disclaimer**

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

# Interference Statements and Warnings

## FCC Statement

This switch complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- 1 This switch may not cause harmful interference.
- 2 This switch must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

## FCC Warning

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital switch, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

## CE Mark Warning:

This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

## Taiwanese BSMI (Bureau of Standards, Metrology and Inspection) A Warning:

警告使用者  
這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境使用時，  
可能造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，  
使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

## Notice 1

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

## Certifications

- 1 Go to [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com)
- 2 Select your product from the drop-down list box on the ZyXEL home page to go to that product's page.
- 3 Select the certification you wish to view from this page.



## Registration

Register your product online for free future product updates and information at [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) for global products, or at [www.us.zyxel.com](http://www.us.zyxel.com) for North American products.

## Safety Warnings

For your safety, be sure to read and follow all warning notices and instructions.

- To reduce the risk of fire, use only No. 26 AWG (American Wire Gauge) or larger telecommunication line cord.
- Do NOT open the device or unit. Opening or removing covers can expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. ONLY qualified service personnel can service the device. Please contact your vendor for further information.
- Use ONLY the dedicated power supply for your device. Connect the power cord or power adaptor to the right supply voltage (110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe).
- Do NOT use the device if the power supply is damaged as it might cause electrocution.
- If the power supply is damaged, remove it from the power outlet.
- Do NOT attempt to repair the power supply. Contact your local vendor to order a new power supply.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them. Do NOT allow anything to rest on the power cord and do NOT locate the product where anyone can walk on the power cord.
- If you wall mount your device, make sure that no electrical, gas or water pipes will be damaged.
- Do NOT install nor use your device during a thunderstorm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do NOT expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do NOT use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Do NOT obstruct the device ventilation slots, as insufficient airflow may harm your device.
- Do NOT store things on the device.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.

# ZyXEL Limited Warranty

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in materials or workmanship for a period of up to two years from the date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product is modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

## Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind of character to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact ZyXEL's Service Center for your Return Material Authorization number (RMA). Products must be returned Postage Prepaid. It is recommended that the unit be insured when shipped. Any returned products without proof of purchase or those with an out-dated warranty will be repaired or replaced (at the discretion of ZyXEL) and the customer will be billed for parts and labor. All repaired or replaced products will be shipped by ZyXEL to the corresponding return address, Postage Paid. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from country to country.

## Registration

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) for global products, or at [www.us.zyxel.com](http://www.us.zyxel.com) for North American products.

# Customer Support

Please have the following information ready when you contact customer support.

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

METHOD	SUPPORT E-MAIL	TELEPHONE*	WEB SITE	REGULAR MAIL
LOCATION	SALES E-MAIL	FAX	FTP SITE	
CORPORATE HEADQUARTERS (WORLDWIDE)	support@zyxel.com.tw	+886-3-578-3942	www.zyxel.com www.europe.zyxel.com	ZyXEL Communications Corp. 6 Innovation Road II Science Park Hsinchu 300 Taiwan
	sales@zyxel.com.tw	+886-3-578-2439	ftp.zyxel.com ftp.europe.zyxel.com	
CZECH REPUBLIC	info@cz.zyxel.com	+420-241-091-350	www.zyxel.cz	ZyXEL Communications Czech s.r.o. Modranská 621 143 01 Praha 4 - Modrany Ceská Republika
	info@cz.zyxel.com	+420-241-091-359		
DENMARK	support@zyxel.dk	+45-39-55-07-00	www.zyxel.dk	ZyXEL Communications A/S Columbusvej 2860 Soeborg Denmark
	sales@zyxel.dk	+45-39-55-07-07		
FINLAND	support@zyxel.fi	+358-9-4780-8411	www.zyxel.fi	ZyXEL Communications Oy Malminkaari 10 00700 Helsinki Finland
	sales@zyxel.fi	+358-9-4780 8448		
FRANCE	info@zyxel.fr	+33-4-72-52-97-97	www.zyxel.fr	ZyXEL France 1 rue des Vergers Bat. 1 / C 69760 Limonest France
		+33-4-72-52-19-20		
GERMANY	support@zyxel.de	+49-2405-6909-0	www.zyxel.de	ZyXEL Deutschland GmbH. Adenauerstr. 20/A2 D-52146 Wuerselen Germany
	sales@zyxel.de	+49-2405-6909-99		
HUNGARY	support@zyxel.hu	+36-1-3361649	www.zyxel.hu	ZyXEL Hungary 48, Zoldlomb Str. H-1025, Budapest Hungary
	info@zyxel.hu	+36-1-3259100		
KAZAKHSTAN	http://zyxel.kz/support	+7-3272-590-698	www.zyxel.kz	ZyXEL Kazakhstan 43, Dostyk ave., Office 414 Dostyk Business Centre 050010, Almaty Republic of Kazakhstan
	sales@zyxel.kz	+7-3272-590-689		
NORTH AMERICA	support@zyxel.com	1-800-255-4101 +1-714-632-0882	www.us.zyxel.com	ZyXEL Communications Inc. 1130 N. Miller St. Anaheim CA 92806-2001 U.S.A.
	sales@zyxel.com	+1-714-632-0858	ftp.us.zyxel.com	
NORWAY	support@zyxel.no	+47-22-80-61-80	www.zyxel.no	ZyXEL Communications A/S Niils Hansens vei 13 0667 Oslo Norway
	sales@zyxel.no	+47-22-80-61-81		

LOCATION	METHOD	SUPPORT E-MAIL	TELEPHONE*	WEB SITE	REGULAR MAIL
		SALES E-MAIL	FAX	FTP SITE	
POLAND		info@pl.zyxel.com	+48 (22) 333 8250	www.pl.zyxel.com	ZyXEL Communications ul. Okrzei 1A 03-715 Warszawa Poland
			+48 (22) 333 8251		
RUSSIA		http://zyxel.ru/support	+7-095-542-89-29	www.zyxel.ru	ZyXEL Russia Ostrovityanova 37a Str. Moscow, 117279 Russia
		sales@zyxel.ru	+7-095-542-89-25		
SPAIN		support@zyxel.es	+34-902-195-420	www.zyxel.es	ZyXEL Communications Arte, 21 5ª planta 28033 Madrid Spain
		sales@zyxel.es	+34-913-005-345		
SWEDEN		support@zyxel.se	+46-31-744-7700	www.zyxel.se	ZyXEL Communications A/S Sjöporten 4, 41764 Göteborg Sweden
		sales@zyxel.se	+46-31-744-7701		
UKRAINE		support@ua.zyxel.com	+380-44-247-69-78	www.ua.zyxel.com	ZyXEL Ukraine 13, Pimonenko Str. Kiev, 04050 Ukraine
		sales@ua.zyxel.com	+380-44-494-49-32		
UNITED KINGDOM		support@zyxel.co.uk	+44-1344 303044 08707 555779 (UK only)	www.zyxel.co.uk	ZyXEL Communications UK Ltd., 11 The Courtyard, Eastern Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 2XB, United Kingdom (UK)
		sales@zyxel.co.uk	+44-1344 303034	ftp.zyxel.co.uk	

\* "+" is the (prefix) number you enter to make an international telephone call.

# Table of Contents

<b>Copyright</b> .....	<b>2</b>
<b>Interference Statements and Warnings</b> .....	<b>3</b>
<b>ZyXEL Limited Warranty</b> .....	<b>5</b>
<b>Customer Support</b> .....	<b>6</b>
<b>Table of Contents</b> .....	<b>8</b>
<b>List of Figures</b> .....	<b>18</b>
<b>List of Tables</b> .....	<b>22</b>
<b>Preface</b> .....	<b>26</b>
<b>Chapter 1</b>	
<b>Getting to Know Your Switch</b> .....	<b>30</b>
1.1 Introduction .....	30
1.2 Features .....	30
1.2.1 Hardware Features .....	30
1.2.2 Firmware Features .....	31
1.3 Applications .....	33
1.3.1 Backbone Application .....	33
1.3.2 Bridging Example .....	34
1.3.3 High Performance Switched Workgroup Example .....	34
1.3.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Examples .....	35
1.3.4.1 Tag-based VLAN Workgroup Example .....	35
1.3.4.2 VLAN Shared Server Example .....	36
<b>Chapter 2</b>	
<b>Hardware Installation and Connection</b> .....	<b>38</b>
2.1 Installation Scenarios .....	38
2.2 Desktop Installation Procedure .....	38
2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack .....	39
2.3.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements .....	39
2.3.1.1 Precautions .....	39
2.3.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch .....	39
2.3.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack .....	40



<b>Chapter 3</b>	
<b>Hardware Overview</b> .....	<b>41</b>
3.1 Safety Warnings .....	41
3.2 Front Panel .....	41
3.2.1 Console Port .....	42
3.2.2 Gigabit Ports .....	43
3.2.2.1 Default Ethernet Negotiation Settings .....	43
3.2.2.2 Auto-crossover .....	43
3.2.3 Mini GBIC Slots .....	44
3.2.3.1 Transceiver Installation .....	44
3.2.3.2 Transceiver Removal .....	44
3.2.4 Management Port .....	45
3.3 Rear Panel .....	45
3.3.1 Power Connector .....	46
3.4 Front Panel LEDs .....	46
3.5 Configuring the Switch .....	47
<b>Chapter 4</b>	
<b>Introducing the Web Configurator</b> .....	<b>48</b>
4.1 Introduction .....	48
4.2 System Login .....	48
4.3 Status Screen .....	49
4.3.1 Change Your Password .....	52
4.4 Switch Lockout .....	52
4.5 Resetting the Switch .....	53
4.5.1 Logging Out of the Web Configurator .....	54
4.5.2 Help .....	54
<b>Chapter 5</b>	
<b>System Status and Port Details</b> .....	<b>55</b>
5.1 About System Statistics and Information .....	55
5.2 Port Status Summary .....	55
5.2.1 Port Details .....	56
<b>Chapter 6</b>	
<b>Basic Setting</b> .....	<b>60</b>
6.1 Introducing the Basic Setting Screens .....	60
6.2 System Information .....	60
6.3 General Setup .....	62
6.4 Introduction to VLANs .....	64
6.5 Switch Setup Screen .....	64
6.6 IP Setup .....	66
6.7 Port Setup .....	68

<b>Chapter 7</b>	
<b>VLAN</b> .....	<b>70</b>
7.1 Introduction to IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN .....	70
7.1.1 Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames .....	70
7.1.2 Automatic VLAN Registration .....	71
7.1.2.1 GARP .....	71
7.1.2.2 GARP Timers .....	71
7.1.2.3 GVRP .....	71
7.1.3 Port VLAN Trunking .....	72
7.2 802.1Q VLAN .....	72
7.2.1 802.1Q VLAN Port Settings .....	74
7.2.2 802.1Q Static VLAN .....	75
7.2.3 Viewing and Editing VLAN Settings .....	76
7.2.3.1 VID1 Example Screen .....	77
7.3 Introduction to Port-based VLANs .....	77
7.3.1 Configuring a Port-based VLAN .....	77
<b>Chapter 8</b>	
<b>Static MAC Forward Setup</b> .....	<b>80</b>
8.1 Introduction to Static MAC Forward Setup .....	80
8.2 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding .....	80
8.3 Viewing and Editing Static MAC Forwarding Rules .....	81
<b>Chapter 9</b>	
<b>Filtering</b> .....	<b>82</b>
9.1 Introduction to Filtering .....	82
9.2 Configuring a Filtering Rule .....	82
9.3 Viewing and Editing Filter Rules .....	83
<b>Chapter 10</b>	
<b>Spanning Tree Protocol</b> .....	<b>84</b>
10.1 Introduction to Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) .....	84
10.1.1 STP Terminology .....	84
10.1.2 How STP Works .....	85
10.1.3 STP Port States .....	85
10.2 STP Status .....	85
10.2.1 Configuring STP .....	87
<b>Chapter 11</b>	
<b>Bandwidth Control</b> .....	<b>89</b>
11.1 Introduction to Bandwidth Control .....	89
11.1.1 CIR and PIR .....	89
11.1.2 Bandwidth Control Setup .....	89

<b>Chapter 12</b>	
<b>Broadcast Storm Control .....</b>	<b>91</b>
12.1 Introducing Broadcast Storm Control .....	91
12.2 Configuring Broadcast Storm Control .....	91
<b>Chapter 13</b>	
<b>Mirroring .....</b>	<b>93</b>
13.1 Introduction to Port Mirroring .....	93
13.2 Port Mirroring Configuration .....	93
<b>Chapter 14</b>	
<b>Link Aggregation .....</b>	<b>95</b>
14.1 Introduction to Link Aggregation .....	95
14.1.1 Dynamic Link Aggregation .....	95
14.1.2 Link Aggregation ID .....	96
14.2 Link Aggregation Protocol Status .....	96
14.3 Link Aggregation Setup .....	97
<b>Chapter 15</b>	
<b>Port Authentication.....</b>	<b>100</b>
15.1 Introduction to Authentication .....	100
15.1.1 RADIUS .....	100
15.2 Configuring Port Authentication .....	100
15.2.1 Configuring RADIUS Server Settings .....	101
15.2.2 Configuring IEEE802.1x .....	101
<b>Chapter 16</b>	
<b>Port Security.....</b>	<b>103</b>
16.1 About Port Security .....	103
16.2 Port Security Setup .....	103
<b>Chapter 17</b>	
<b>Access Control.....</b>	<b>105</b>
17.1 About Access Control .....	105
17.2 Access Control Overview .....	105
17.3 About SNMP .....	106
17.3.1 Supported MIBs .....	107
17.3.2 SNMP Traps .....	107
17.3.3 Configuring SNMP .....	108
17.3.4 Setting Up Login Accounts .....	108
17.4 SSH Overview .....	110
17.5 How SSH works .....	110
17.6 SSH Implementation .....	111

17.6.1 Requirements for Using SSH .....	111
17.7 Introduction to HTTPS .....	111
17.7.1 HTTPS Example .....	112
17.7.2 Internet Explorer Warning Messages .....	112
17.7.3 Netscape Navigator Warning Messages .....	113
17.7.4 Login Screen .....	113
17.8 Service Access Control .....	115
17.9 Remote Management .....	115
<b>Chapter 18</b>	
<b>Queuing Method.....</b>	<b>117</b>
18.1 Introduction to Queuing .....	117
18.1.1 Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ) .....	117
18.1.2 Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) .....	118
18.2 Configuring Queuing .....	118
<b>Chapter 19</b>	
<b>Classifier .....</b>	<b>120</b>
19.1 About the Classifier and QoS .....	120
19.2 Configuring the Classifier .....	120
19.3 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration .....	123
19.4 Classifier Example .....	124
<b>Chapter 20</b>	
<b>Policy Rule.....</b>	<b>125</b>
20.1 About Policy Rules .....	125
20.1.1 DiffServ .....	125
20.1.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior .....	125
20.2 Configuring Policy Rules .....	125
20.3 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration .....	128
20.4 Policy Example .....	129
<b>Chapter 21</b>	
<b>Multicast .....</b>	<b>131</b>
21.1 Multicast Overview .....	131
21.1.1 IP Multicast Addresses .....	131
21.1.2 IGMP Filtering .....	131
21.1.3 IGMP Snooping .....	131
21.2 Multicast Status .....	132
21.3 Multicast Setup .....	132
21.4 IGMP Filtering Profile .....	134
21.5 MVR Overview .....	135
21.5.1 Types of MVR Ports .....	136

21.5.2 MVR Modes .....	136
21.5.3 How MVR Works .....	136
21.6 General MVR Configuration .....	137
21.7 MVR Group Configuration .....	138
21.7.1 MVR Configuration Example .....	140
<b>Chapter 22</b>	
<b>DHCP Relay .....</b>	<b>142</b>
22.1 DHCP Relay Overview .....	142
22.1.1 DHCP “Relay Agent Information Option” .....	142
22.1.2 DHCP Relay Agent Circuit ID Sub-option Format .....	142
22.2 DHCP Relay Configuration .....	142
<b>Chapter 23</b>	
<b>Routing Protocol .....</b>	<b>144</b>
23.1 Static Route .....	144
<b>Chapter 24</b>	
<b>Maintenance .....</b>	<b>146</b>
24.1 Maintenance .....	146
24.2 Firmware Upgrade .....	146
24.3 Restore a Configuration File .....	147
24.4 Backing Up a Configuration File .....	147
24.5 Load Factory Defaults .....	148
24.6 Reboot System .....	148
24.7 Command Line FTP .....	149
24.7.1 Filename Conventions .....	149
24.7.1.1 Example FTP Commands .....	149
24.7.2 FTP Command Line Procedure .....	150
24.7.3 GUI-based FTP Clients .....	150
24.7.4 FTP Restrictions .....	151
<b>Chapter 25</b>	
<b>Diagnostic.....</b>	<b>152</b>
25.1 Diagnostic .....	152
<b>Chapter 26</b>	
<b>Syslog .....</b>	<b>153</b>
26.1 Syslog .....	153
26.2 Syslog Setup .....	153
26.3 Syslog Server Setup .....	154

<b>Chapter 27</b>	
<b>Cluster Management.....</b>	<b>156</b>
27.1 Introduction to Cluster Management .....	156
27.2 Cluster Management Status .....	157
27.2.1 Cluster Member Switch Management .....	158
27.2.1.1 Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch .....	158
27.3 Configuring Cluster Management .....	159
<b>Chapter 28</b>	
<b>MAC Table.....</b>	<b>161</b>
28.1 Introduction to MAC Table .....	161
28.2 Viewing MAC Table .....	162
<b>Chapter 29</b>	
<b>ARP Table .....</b>	<b>163</b>
29.1 Introduction to ARP Table .....	163
29.1.1 How ARP Works .....	163
29.2 Viewing ARP Table .....	163
<b>Chapter 30</b>	
<b>Introducing the Commands .....</b>	<b>166</b>
30.1 Overview .....	166
30.1.1 Switch Configuration File .....	166
30.2 Accessing the CLI .....	166
30.2.1 Access Priority .....	166
30.2.2 The Console Port .....	167
30.2.2.1 Initial Screen .....	167
30.2.3 Telnet .....	167
30.3 The Login Screen .....	168
30.4 Command Syntax Conventions .....	168
30.5 Getting Help .....	168
30.5.1 List of Available Commands .....	169
30.5.2 Detailed Command Information .....	169
30.6 Command Modes .....	170
30.7 Using Command History .....	170
30.8 Saving Your Configuration .....	171
30.8.1 Logging Out .....	171
30.9 Command Summary .....	171
30.9.1 User Mode .....	171
30.9.2 Enable Mode .....	172
30.9.3 Configure Mode .....	176
30.9.4 config-vlan Commands .....	187
30.9.5 interface Commands .....	188

30.9.6 mvr Commands .....	191
<b>Chapter 31</b>	
<b>Command Examples.....</b>	<b>193</b>
31.1 Overview .....	193
31.2 show Commands .....	193
31.2.1 show system-information .....	193
31.2.2 show hardware-monitor .....	194
31.2.3 show ip .....	194
31.2.4 show logging .....	195
31.2.5 show interface .....	195
31.2.6 show mac address-table .....	196
31.3 ping .....	197
31.4 traceroute .....	198
31.5 Enabling RSTP .....	198
31.6 Configuration File Maintenance .....	198
31.6.1 Backing up Configuration .....	199
31.6.2 Restoring Configuration .....	199
31.6.3 Using a Different Configuration File .....	200
31.6.4 Resetting to the Factory Default .....	200
31.7 Example no Commands .....	201
31.7.1 no mirror-port .....	201
31.7.2 no https timeout .....	201
31.7.3 no trunk .....	202
31.7.4 no port-access-authenticator .....	202
31.7.5 no ssh .....	203
31.8 interface Commands .....	203
31.8.1 interface .....	204
31.8.2 bpdu-control .....	204
31.8.3 broadcast-limit .....	205
31.8.4 bandwidth-limit .....	205
31.8.5 mirror .....	206
31.8.6 gvrp .....	207
31.8.7 ingress-check .....	207
31.8.8 frame-type .....	208
31.8.9 vlan-trunking .....	208
31.8.10 weight .....	209
31.8.11 egress set .....	209
31.8.12 qos priority .....	210
31.8.13 name .....	210
31.8.14 speed-duplex .....	211

<b>Chapter 32</b>	
<b>IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN Commands .....</b>	<b>212</b>
32.1 IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN Overview .....	212
32.2 VLAN Databases .....	212
32.2.1 Static Entries (SVLAN Table) .....	212
32.2.2 Dynamic Entries (DVLAN Table) .....	213
32.3 Configuring Tagged VLAN .....	213
32.4 Global VLAN1Q Tagged VLAN Configuration Commands .....	214
32.4.1 GARP Status .....	214
32.4.2 GARP Timer .....	214
32.4.3 Show GVRP .....	215
32.4.4 Enable GVRP .....	215
32.4.5 Disable GVRP .....	216
32.5 Port VLAN Commands .....	216
32.5.1 Set Port VID .....	216
32.5.2 Set Acceptable Frame Type .....	216
32.5.3 Enable or Disable Port GVRP .....	217
32.5.4 Modify Static VLAN .....	217
32.5.4.1 Modify a Static VLAN Table Example .....	218
32.5.4.2 Forwarding Process Example .....	218
32.5.5 Delete VLAN ID .....	218
32.6 Enable VLAN .....	219
32.7 Disable VLAN .....	219
32.8 Show VLAN Setting .....	219
<b>Chapter 33</b>	
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>222</b>
33.1 Problems Starting Up the Switch .....	222
33.2 Problems Accessing the Switch .....	222
33.2.1 Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions .....	223
33.2.1.1 Internet Explorer Pop-up Blockers .....	223
33.2.1.2 JavaScripts .....	226
33.2.1.3 Java Permissions .....	228
33.3 Problems with the Password .....	230
<b>Appendix A</b>	
<b>Product Specifications .....</b>	<b>232</b>
<b>Appendix B</b>	
<b>IP Subnetting.....</b>	<b>236</b>
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>244</b>





# List of Figures

Figure 1 Backbone Application .....	33
Figure 2 Bridging Application .....	34
Figure 3 High Performance Switched Application .....	35
Figure 4 Tag-based VLAN Application .....	35
Figure 5 Shared Server Using VLAN Example .....	36
Figure 6 Attaching Rubber Feet .....	39
Figure 7 Attaching the Mounting Brackets .....	40
Figure 8 Mounting the Switch on a Rack .....	40
Figure 9 Front Panel: GS-3012 .....	41
Figure 10 Front Panel: GS-3012F .....	42
Figure 11 Transceiver Installation Example .....	44
Figure 12 Connecting the Fiber Optic Cables .....	44
Figure 13 Removing the Fiber Optic Cables .....	45
Figure 14 Opening the Transceiver's Latch Example .....	45
Figure 15 Transceiver Removal Example .....	45
Figure 16 Rear Panel .....	46
Figure 17 Web Configurator: login .....	48
Figure 18 Web Configurator Home Screen (Status) .....	49
Figure 19 Web Configurator: Change Password at Login .....	52
Figure 20 Resetting the Switch: Via Console Port .....	54
Figure 21 Web Configurator: Logout Screen .....	54
Figure 22 Status .....	55
Figure 23 Status: Port Details .....	57
Figure 24 System Info .....	61
Figure 25 General Setup .....	62
Figure 26 Switch Setup .....	64
Figure 27 IP Setup .....	66
Figure 28 Port Setup .....	68
Figure 29 Port VLAN Trunking .....	72
Figure 30 Selecting a VLAN Type .....	72
Figure 31 802.1Q VLAN Status .....	73
Figure 32 802.1Q VLAN Port Settings .....	74
Figure 33 802.1Q Static VLAN .....	75
Figure 34 Static VLAN: Summary Table .....	76
Figure 35 VID1 Example Screen .....	77
Figure 36 Port Based VLAN Setup (All Connected) .....	78
Figure 37 Port Based VLAN Setup (Port isolation) .....	78
Figure 38 Static MAC Forwarding .....	80

Figure 39 Static MAC Forwarding: Summary Table .....	81
Figure 40 Filtering .....	82
Figure 41 Filtering: Summary Table .....	83
Figure 42 Spanning Tree Protocol: Status .....	86
Figure 43 Spanning Tree Protocol: Configuration .....	87
Figure 44 Bandwidth Control .....	90
Figure 45 Broadcast Storm Control .....	91
Figure 46 Mirroring .....	93
Figure 47 Link Aggregation: Link Aggregation Protocol Status .....	96
Figure 48 Link Aggregation: Configuration .....	98
Figure 49 RADIUS Server .....	100
Figure 50 Port Authentication .....	101
Figure 51 Port Authentication: RADIUS .....	101
Figure 52 Port Authentication: 802.1x .....	102
Figure 53 Port Security .....	103
Figure 54 Access Control .....	105
Figure 55 Console Port Priority .....	106
Figure 56 SNMP Management Model .....	106
Figure 57 Access Control: SNMP .....	108
Figure 58 Access Control: Logins .....	109
Figure 59 SSH Communication Example .....	110
Figure 60 How SSH Works .....	110
Figure 61 HTTPS Implementation .....	112
Figure 62 Security Alert Dialog Box (Internet Explorer) .....	112
Figure 63 Security Certificate 1 (Netscape) .....	113
Figure 64 Security Certificate 2 (Netscape) .....	113
Figure 65 Main Screen (Internet Explorer) .....	114
Figure 66 Main Screen (Netscape) .....	114
Figure 67 Access Control: Service Access Control .....	115
Figure 68 Access Control: Remote Management .....	116
Figure 69 Queuing Method .....	118
Figure 70 Classifier .....	121
Figure 71 Classifier: Summary Table .....	123
Figure 72 Classifier: Example .....	124
Figure 73 Policy .....	126
Figure 74 Policy: Summary Table .....	128
Figure 75 Policy Example .....	130
Figure 76 Multicast Status .....	132
Figure 77 Multicast Setting .....	133
Figure 78 Multicast: IGMP Filtering Profile .....	134
Figure 79 MVR Network Example .....	136
Figure 80 MVR Multicast Television Example .....	137
Figure 81 MVR .....	137

Figure 82 MVR Group Configuration .....	139
Figure 83 MVR Configuration Example .....	140
Figure 84 MVR Configuration Example .....	140
Figure 85 MVR Configuration Example .....	141
Figure 86 MVR Configuration Example .....	141
Figure 87 DHCP Relay .....	143
Figure 88 Static Routing .....	144
Figure 89 Static Routing: Summary Table .....	145
Figure 90 Maintenance .....	146
Figure 91 Firmware Upgrade .....	146
Figure 92 Restore Configuration .....	147
Figure 93 Backup Configuration .....	147
Figure 94 Confirm Load Factory Defaults .....	148
Figure 95 Close Browser after Load Factory Defaults .....	148
Figure 96 Confirm Restart the Switch .....	149
Figure 97 Diagnostic .....	152
Figure 98 Syslog Setup .....	154
Figure 99 Syslog Server Setup .....	155
Figure 100 Clustering Application Example .....	156
Figure 101 Cluster Management Status .....	157
Figure 102 Cluster Member Web Configuration Screen .....	158
Figure 103 Example: Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch .....	158
Figure 104 Configuring Cluster Management .....	159
Figure 105 MAC Table Flowchart .....	161
Figure 106 MAC Table .....	162
Figure 107 ARP Table .....	164
Figure 108 Initial Console Port Screen .....	167
Figure 109 CLI: Login Screen .....	168
Figure 110 CLI Help: List of Commands: Example 1 .....	169
Figure 111 CLI Help: List of Commands: Example 2 .....	169
Figure 112 CLI Help: Detailed Command Information: Example 1 .....	170
Figure 113 CLI: Help: Detailed Command Information: Example 2 .....	170
Figure 114 CLI: History Command Example .....	171
Figure 115 CLI: write memory .....	171
Figure 116 show system-information Command Example .....	193
Figure 117 how hardware-monitor Command Example .....	194
Figure 118 show ip Command Example .....	195
Figure 119 show logging Command Example .....	195
Figure 120 show interface Command Example .....	196
Figure 121 show mac address-table Command Example .....	197
Figure 122 ping Command Example .....	197
Figure 123 traceroute Command Example .....	198
Figure 124 Enable RSTP Command Example .....	198

Figure 125 CLI: Backup Configuration Example .....	199
Figure 126 CLI: Restore Configuration Example .....	200
Figure 127 boot config Command Example .....	200
Figure 128 CLI: reload config Command Example .....	200
Figure 129 CLI: Reset to the Factory Default Example .....	201
Figure 130 no mirror-port Command Example .....	201
Figure 131 no https timeout Command Example .....	201
Figure 132 no trunk Command Example .....	202
Figure 133 no port-access-authenticator Command Example .....	203
Figure 134 no ssh Command Example .....	203
Figure 135 interface Command Example .....	204
Figure 136 interface bpdu-control Command Example .....	205
Figure 137 broadcast-limit Command Example .....	205
Figure 138 bandwidth-limit Command Example .....	206
Figure 139 mirror Command Example .....	206
Figure 140 gvrp Command Example .....	207
Figure 141 ingress-check Command Example .....	207
Figure 142 frame-type Command Example .....	208
Figure 143 vlan-trunking Command Example .....	208
Figure 144 weight Command Example .....	209
Figure 145 egress set Command Example .....	209
Figure 146 qos priority Command Example .....	210
Figure 147 name Command Example .....	210
Figure 148 speed-duplex Command Example .....	211
Figure 149 Tagged VLAN Configuration and Activation Example .....	213
Figure 150 CPU VLAN Configuration and Activation Example .....	214
Figure 151 garp status Command Example .....	214
Figure 152 show gvrp Command Example .....	215
Figure 153 port default vid Command Example .....	216
Figure 154 frame type Command Example .....	217
Figure 155 no gvrp Command Example .....	217
Figure 156 Modifying Static VLAN Example .....	218
Figure 157 no vlan Command Example .....	219
Figure 158 show vlan Command Example .....	220
Figure 159 Pop-up Blocker .....	223
Figure 160 Internet Options .....	224
Figure 161 Internet Options .....	225
Figure 162 Pop-up Blocker Settings .....	226
Figure 163 Internet Options .....	227
Figure 164 Security Settings - Java Scripting .....	228
Figure 165 Security Settings - Java .....	229
Figure 166 Java (Sun) .....	230

# List of Tables

Table 1 Front Panel Connections .....	42
Table 2 Front Panel LED Descriptions .....	46
Table 3 Navigation Panel Sub-links Overview .....	49
Table 4 Web Configurator Screen Sub-links Details .....	50
Table 5 Navigation Panel Sub-link Descriptions .....	50
Table 6 Status .....	56
Table 7 Status: Port Details .....	57
Table 8 System Info .....	61
Table 9 General Setup .....	63
Table 10 Switch Setup .....	65
Table 11 IP Setup .....	67
Table 12 Port Setup .....	69
Table 13 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN terminology .....	71
Table 14 802.1Q VLAN Status .....	73
Table 15 802.1Q VLAN Port Settings .....	74
Table 16 802.1Q Static VLAN .....	76
Table 17 Static VLAN: Summary Table .....	76
Table 18 Port Based VLAN Setup .....	79
Table 19 Static MAC Forwarding .....	80
Table 20 Static MAC Forwarding: Summary Table .....	81
Table 21 Filtering .....	82
Table 22 Filtering: Summary Table .....	83
Table 23 STP Path Costs .....	84
Table 24 STP Port States .....	85
Table 25 Spanning Tree Protocol: Status .....	86
Table 26 Spanning Tree Protocol: Configuration .....	88
Table 27 Bandwidth Control .....	90
Table 28 Broadcast Storm Control .....	92
Table 29 Mirroring .....	94
Table 30 Link Aggregation ID: Local Switch .....	96
Table 31 Link Aggregation ID: Peer Switch .....	96
Table 32 Link Aggregation: Link Aggregation Protocol Status .....	97
Table 33 Link Aggregation: Configuration .....	98
Table 34 Port Authentication: RADIUS .....	101
Table 35 Port Authentication: 802.1x .....	102
Table 36 Port Security .....	104
Table 37 Access Control Overview .....	105
Table 38 SNMP Commands .....	107

Table 39 SNMP Traps .....	107
Table 40 Access Control: SNMP .....	108
Table 41 Access Control: Logins .....	109
Table 42 Access Control: Service Access Control .....	115
Table 43 Access Control: Remote Management .....	116
Table 44 Physical Queue Priority .....	117
Table 45 Queuing Method .....	119
Table 46 Classifier .....	121
Table 47 Classifier: Summary Table .....	123
Table 48 Common Ethernet Types and Protocol Number .....	123
Table 49 Common IP Ports .....	124
Table 50 Policy .....	126
Table 51 Policy: Summary Table .....	128
Table 52 Multicast Status .....	132
Table 53 Multicast Setting .....	133
Table 54 Multicast: IGMP Filtering Profile .....	135
Table 55 MVR .....	138
Table 56 MVR Group Configuration .....	139
Table 57 DHCP Relay .....	143
Table 58 Static Routing .....	144
Table 59 Static Routing: Summary Table .....	145
Table 60 Filename Conventions .....	149
Table 61 General Commands for GUI-based FTP Clients .....	150
Table 62 Diagnostic .....	152
Table 63 Syslog Severity Levels .....	153
Table 64 Syslog Setup .....	154
Table 65 Syslog Server Setup .....	155
Table 66 ZyXEL Clustering Management Specifications .....	156
Table 67 Cluster Management Status .....	157
Table 68 FTP Upload to Cluster member Example .....	159
Table 69 Configuring Cluster Management .....	160
Table 70 MAC Table .....	162
Table 71 ARP Table .....	164
Table 72 Command Summary: User Mode .....	171
Table 73 Command Summary: Enable Mode .....	172
Table 74 Command Summary: Configure Mode .....	176
Table 75 Command Summary: config-vlan Commands .....	187
Table 76 Command Summary: Interface .....	188
Table 77 Command Summary: mvr Commands .....	191
Table 78 Troubleshooting the Start-Up of Your Switch .....	222
Table 79 Troubleshooting Accessing the Switch .....	222
Table 80 Troubleshooting the Password .....	230
Table 81 General Product Specifications .....	232

Table 82 Performance and Management Specifications .....	233
Table 83 Physical and Environmental Specifications .....	234
Table 84 Classes of IP Addresses .....	236
Table 85 Allowed IP Address Range By Class .....	237
Table 86 "Natural" Masks .....	237
Table 87 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation .....	238
Table 88 Two Subnets Example .....	238
Table 89 Subnet 1 .....	239
Table 90 Subnet 2 .....	239
Table 91 Subnet 1 .....	240
Table 92 Subnet 2 .....	240
Table 93 Subnet 3 .....	240
Table 94 Subnet 4 .....	241
Table 95 Eight Subnets .....	241
Table 96 Class C Subnet Planning .....	241
Table 97 Class B Subnet Planning .....	242





# Preface

Congratulations on your purchase from the Dimension series of switches.

This preface introduces you to the GS-3012 models and discusses the conventions of this User's Guide. It also provides information on other related documentation.

## About the GS-3012 Series

The GS-3012 Gigabit Ethernet Switches are managed switches with features ideally suited in an enterprise environment. They can deliver broadband IP services to:

- Multi-tenant unit (MTU) buildings (hotels, motels, resorts, residential multi-dwelling units, office buildings, educational establishments, etc.)
- Public facilities (convention centers, airports, plazas, train stations, etc.)
- Enterprises.

They can also be deployed as a mini-POP (point-of-presence) in a building basement delivering 10/100/1000Mbps data service over Category 5 wiring to each customer.

## About the GS-3012

There are two GS-3012 models. The GS-3012 DC model requires DC power supply input of -48 VDC to -60 VDC, 1.84A Max. The GS-3012 AC model requires 100~240VAC/1.5A power.

## About the GS-3012F

There are two GS-3012F models. The GS-3012F DC model requires DC power supply input of -48 VDC to -60 VDC, 1.2A Max. The GS-3012F AC model requires 100~240VAC/1.5A power.

**Note:** All figures in this guide display the GS-3012F AC model unless specifically noted otherwise.

## General Syntax Conventions

This guide shows you how to configure the switch using the web configurator and CLI commands. See the online HTML help for information on individual web configurator screens.

- Mouse action sequences are denoted using a comma. For example, click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Network** means first you click **Start**, click or move the mouse pointer over **Settings**, then click or move the mouse pointer over **Control Panel** and finally click (or double-click) **Network**.










- “Enter” means for you to type one or more characters. “Select” or “Choose” means for you to use one of the predefined choices.
- Predefined choices are in **Bold Arial** font.
- Button and field labels, links and screen names in are in **Bold Times New Roman** font.
- “e.g.” is a shorthand for “for instance”, and “i.e.” means “that is” or “in other words”.
- This User’s Guide will refer to both the GS-3012 and the GS-3012F as the “GS” or “the switch” in this User’s Guide. Distinctions between the models will be made where needed.

## Firmware Naming Conventions

A firmware version includes the network operating system platform version, model code and release number as shown in the following example.

Firmware Version: V3.60 (ABM.4)
“V3.60” is the network operating system platform version.
“ABM” is the model code.
“4” is this firmware’s release number. This varies as new firmware is released. Your firmware’s release number may not match what is displayed in this <i>User’s Guide</i> .

## Graphics Icons Key

GS-3012 Series 	Computer 	Server 
Computer 	DSLAM 	Gateway 
Central Office/ ISP 	Internet 	Hub/Switch 

## Related Documentation

- Web Configurator Online HTML help  
The online HTML help shows you how to use the web configurator to configure individual screens. More background information can be found in this UG.
- ZyXEL Web Site  
The ZyXEL download library at [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) contains additional support documentation as well as an online glossary of networking terms.

## User Guide Feedback

Help us help you. E-mail all User Guide-related comments, questions or suggestions for improvement to [techwriters@zyxel.com.tw](mailto:techwriters@zyxel.com.tw) or send regular mail to The Technical Writing Team, ZyXEL Communications Corp., 6 Innovation Road II, Science-Based Industrial Park, Hsinchu, 300, Taiwan. Thank you.



# CHAPTER 1

## Getting to Know Your Switch

This chapter describes the key features, benefits and applications of the switch.

### 1.1 Introduction

The GS-3012 and GS-3012F are layer 2 stand-alone Gigabit Ethernet switches.

The GS-3012 has 12 100/1000Mbps ports, four mini GBIC slots for optical uplinking.

The GS-3012F has 12 mini GBIC slots and for uplinking, four 100/1000Mbps ports.

The GS-3012 and GS-3012F both have a console port and RJ-45 port for local management. With the built-in web configurator, managing and configuring the switch is easy. From cabinet management to port-level control and monitoring, you can visually configure and manage your network via the web browser. Just click your mouse instead of typing cryptic command strings. In addition, the switch can also be managed via Telnet, the console port, or third-party SNMP management.

### 1.2 Features

The next two sections describe the hardware and firmware features of the GS-3012 series.

#### 1.2.1 Hardware Features

##### Power

The AC models require 100~240VAC/1.5A power.

The GS-3012 DC model requires DC power supply input of -48 VDC to -60 VDC, 1.88A Max.

The GS-3012F DC model requires DC power supply input of -48 VDC to -60 VDC, 1.2A Max.

##### **12 Gigabit Ports (with two paired with the mini GBIC ports) - GS-3012**

Connect up to 12 computers or switches directly to the 100/1000Mbps auto-negotiating, automatic cable sensing (auto-MDIX) Gigabit ports. All ports support:

- IEEE 802.3/3u/3z/3ab standards
- Back pressure flow control in half duplex mode
- IEEE 802.3x flow control in full duplex mode

## **12 Mini GBIC Slots - GS-3012F**

These are slots for mini GBIC (Gigabit Interface Converter) transceivers. These allow the GS to connect to another WAN switch or daisy-chain to other switches.

## **Four 100/1000 Mbps Gigabit Ports (paired with mini GBIC ports) - GS-3012F**

Connect up to four computers or switches directly to the 100/1000Mbps auto-negotiating, automatic cable sensing (auto-MDIX) Gigabit ports. All ports support:

- IEEE 802.3/3u/3z/3ab standards
- Back pressure flow control in half duplex mode
- IEEE 802.3x flow control in full duplex mode

## **Console Port**

Use the console port for local management of the switch.

## **One Management Port**

Use the RJ-45 management port for local switch management only.

## **Fans**

The fans provide sufficient cooling to allow reliable operation even in poorly ventilated rooms or basements.

## **1.2.2 Firmware Features**

### **IP Protocols**

- IP Host (No routing)
- Telnet for configuration and monitoring
- SNMP for management
- SNMP MIB II (RFC 1213)
- SNMP v1 RFC 1157
- Ethernet MIBs RFC 1643
- Bridge MIBs RFC 1493
- SMI RFC 1155
- RMON RFC 1757
- SNMPv2 or SNMPv2c

- Bridge extension MIBs RFC 2674
- Interface MIB RFC 2863
- Ping and Trace Route RFC 2925

## **Management**

- Web configurator
- Command-line interface locally via console port or remotely via Telnet
- Out-of-band RJ-45 management port
- SNMP

## **System Monitoring**

- System status (link status, rates, statistics counters)
- SNMP
- Temperatures, voltage, fan speed reports and alarms
- Port Mirroring allows you to analyze one port's traffic from another.

## **Security**

- System management password protection
- Port-based VLAN
- IEEE 802.1Q VLAN
- 802.1x Authentication
- Limit dynamic port MAC address learning
- Static MAC address filtering
- Secure SHell communication protocol

## **Port Link Aggregation**

The GS adheres to the IEEE 802.3ad standard for static and dynamic port link aggregation.

## **Bandwidth Control**

- The switch supports rate limiting in 1Mbps increments allowing you to create different service plans
- The switch supports IGMP snooping enabling group multicast traffic to be only forwarded to ports that are members of that group; thus allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your switch.
- Broadcast storm control

## **Quality of Service**

- Eight priority queues so you can ensure mission-critical data gets delivered on time.
- Follows the IEEE 802.1p priority setting.
- Advanced policy-based traffic shaping.



## STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) / RSTP (Rapid STP)

(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a switch to interact with other (R)STP -compliant switches in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.

### Cluster Management

Cluster Management allows you to manage switches through one switch, called the cluster manager. The switches must be directly connected and be in the same VLAN group so as to be able to communicate with one another.

## 1.3 Applications

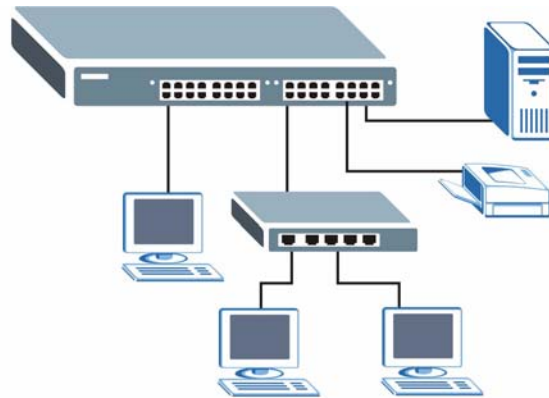
This section shows a few examples of using the switch in various network environments.

### 1.3.1 Backbone Application

In this application, the switch is an ideal solution for small networks where rapid growth can be expected in the near future. The switch can be used standalone for a group of heavy traffic users. You can connect computers directly to the switch's ports or connect other switches to the GS.

In this example, all computers connected directly or indirectly to the GS can share super high-speed applications on the Gigabit server. To expand the network, simply add more networking devices such as switches, routers, firewalls, print servers etc.

**Figure 1** Backbone Application



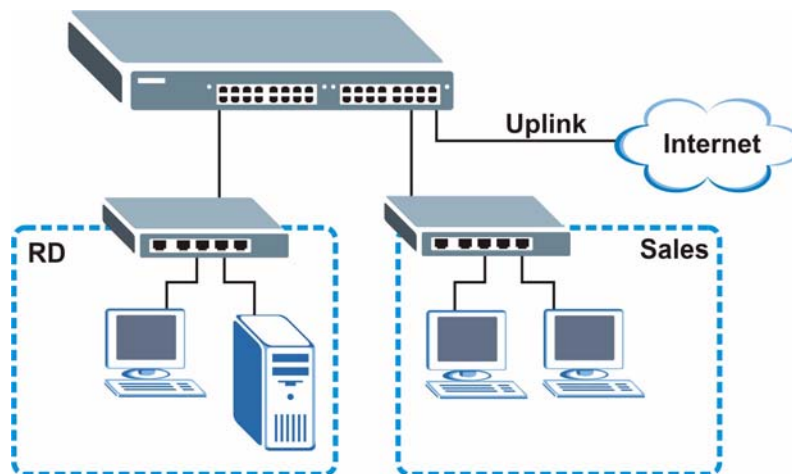
### 1.3.2 Bridging Example

In this example application the switch is the ideal solution for different company departments to connect to the corporate backbone. It can alleviate bandwidth contention and eliminate server and network bottlenecks. All users that need high bandwidth can connect to high-speed department servers via the switch. You can provide a super-fast uplink connection by installing the transceiver(s) in the mini GBIC slots.

Moreover, the switch eases supervision and maintenance by allowing network managers to centralize multiple servers at a single location.

**Note:** Full-duplex mode operation only applies to point-to-point access (for example, when attaching the switch to a workstation, server, or another switch). When connecting to hubs, use a standard cascaded connection set at half-duplex operation.

**Figure 2** Bridging Application

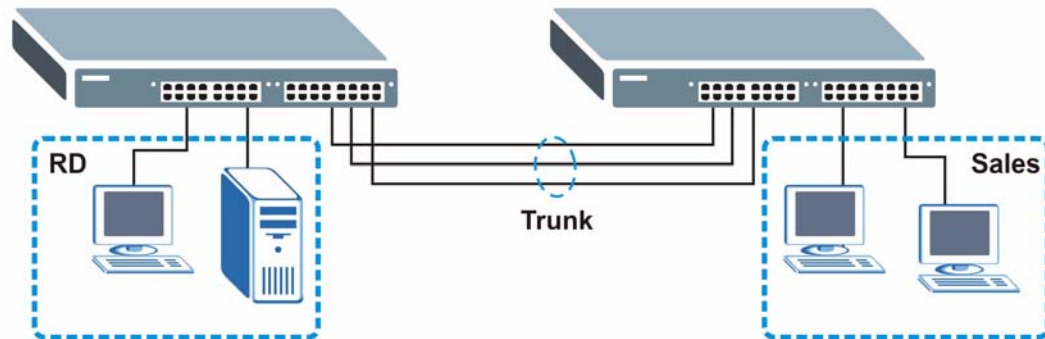


### 1.3.3 High Performance Switched Workgroup Example

The switch is ideal for connecting two power workgroups that need high bandwidth. In the following example, use trunking to connect these two power workgroups.

Switching to higher-speed LANs such as FDDI or ATM is not feasible for most people due to the expense of replacing all existing Ethernet cables and adapter cards, restructuring your network and complex maintenance.

The GS can provide the same bandwidth as FDDI and ATM at much lower cost while still being able to use existing adapters and switches. Moreover, the current LAN structure can be retained as all ports can freely communicate with each other.

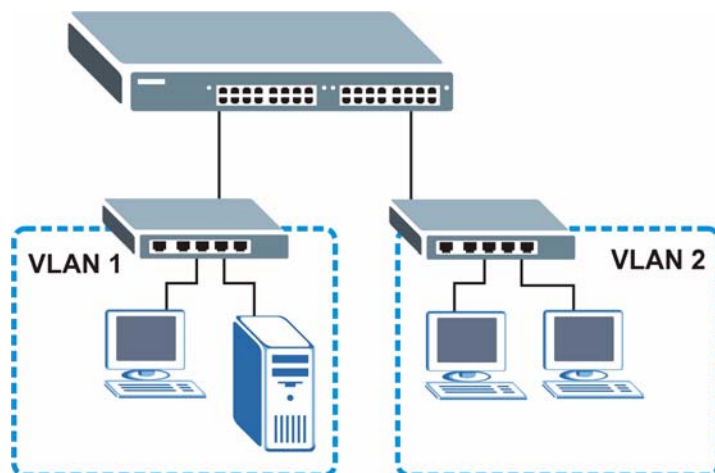
**Figure 3** High Performance Switched Application

### 1.3.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Examples

This section shows a workgroup and a shared server example using 802.1Q tagged VLANs. For more information on VLANs, see the *Switch Setup* section and the *VLAN Setup* chapter in this User's Guide. A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Stations on a logical network belong to one group. A station can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a station cannot directly talk to or hear from stations that are not in the same group(s) unless such traffic first goes through a router.

#### 1.3.4.1 Tag-based VLAN Workgroup Example

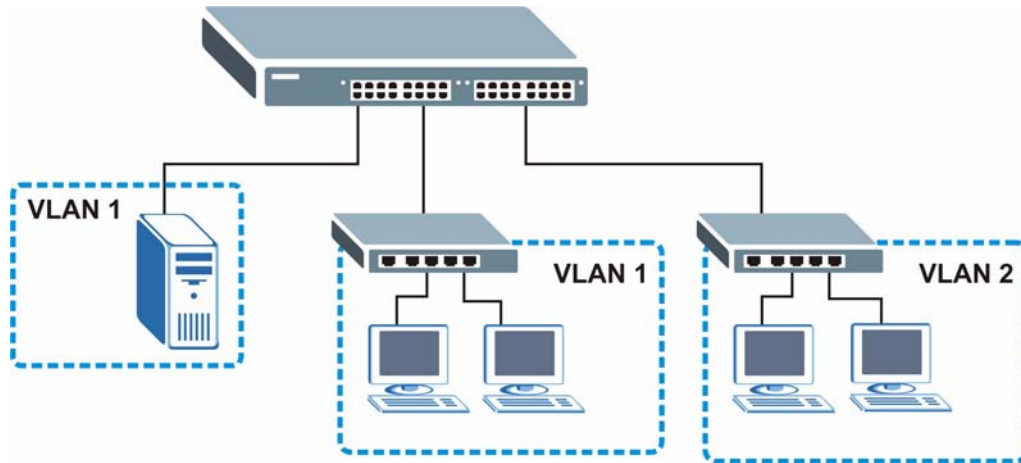
Ports in the same VLAN group share the same broadcast domain thus increase network performance through reduced broadcast traffic. VLAN groups can be modified at any time by adding, moving or changing ports without any re-cabling.

**Figure 4** Tag-based VLAN Application

### 1.3.4.2 VLAN Shared Server Example

Shared resources such as a server can be used by all ports in the same VLAN as the server, as shown in the following example. In this example, only ports that need access to the server need belong to VLAN 1 while they can belong to other VLAN groups too.

**Figure 5** Shared Server Using VLAN Example





# CHAPTER 2

## Hardware Installation and Connection

This chapter shows you how to install and connect the switch.

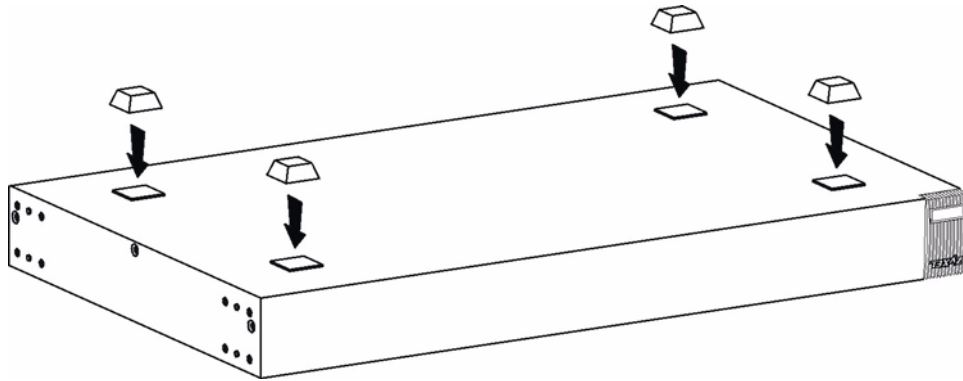
### 2.1 Installation Scenarios

The switch can be placed on a desktop or rack-mounted on a standard EIA rack. Use the rubber feet in a desktop installation and the brackets in a rack-mounted installation.

**Note:** For proper ventilation, allow at least 4 inches (10 cm) of clearance at the front and 3.4 inches (8 cm) at the back of the switch. This is especially important for enclosed rack installations.

### 2.2 Desktop Installation Procedure

- 1 Make sure the switch is clean and dry.
- 2 Set the switch on a smooth, level surface strong enough to support the weight of the switch and the connected cables. Make sure there is a power outlet nearby.
- 3 Make sure there is enough clearance around the switch to allow air circulation and the attachment of cables and the power cord.
- 4 Remove the adhesive backing from the rubber feet.
- 5 Attach the rubber feet to each corner on the bottom of the switch. These rubber feet help protect the switch from shock or vibration and ensure space between devices when stacking.

**Figure 6** Attaching Rubber Feet

**Note:** Do NOT block the ventilation holes. Leave space between devices when stacking.

## 2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

The switch can be mounted on an EIA standard size, 19-inch rack or in a wiring closet with other equipment. Follow the steps below to mount your switch on a standard EIA rack using a rack-mounting kit.

### 2.3.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements

- Two mounting brackets.
- Eight M3 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.
- Four M5 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.

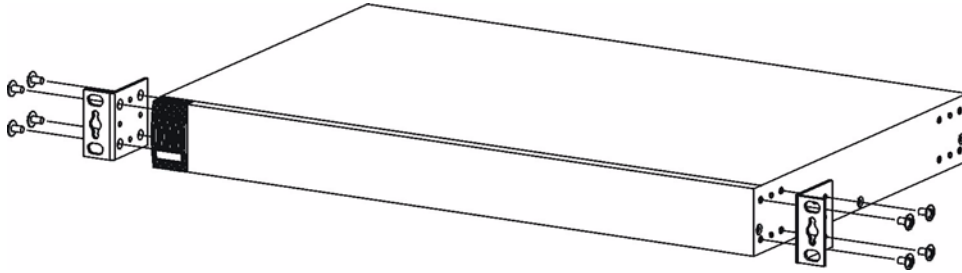
**Note:** Failure to use the proper screws may damage the unit.

#### 2.3.1.1 Precautions

- Make sure the rack will safely support the combined weight of all the equipment it contains.
- Make sure the position of the switch does not make the rack unstable or top-heavy. Take all necessary precautions to anchor the rack securely before installing the unit.

### 2.3.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch

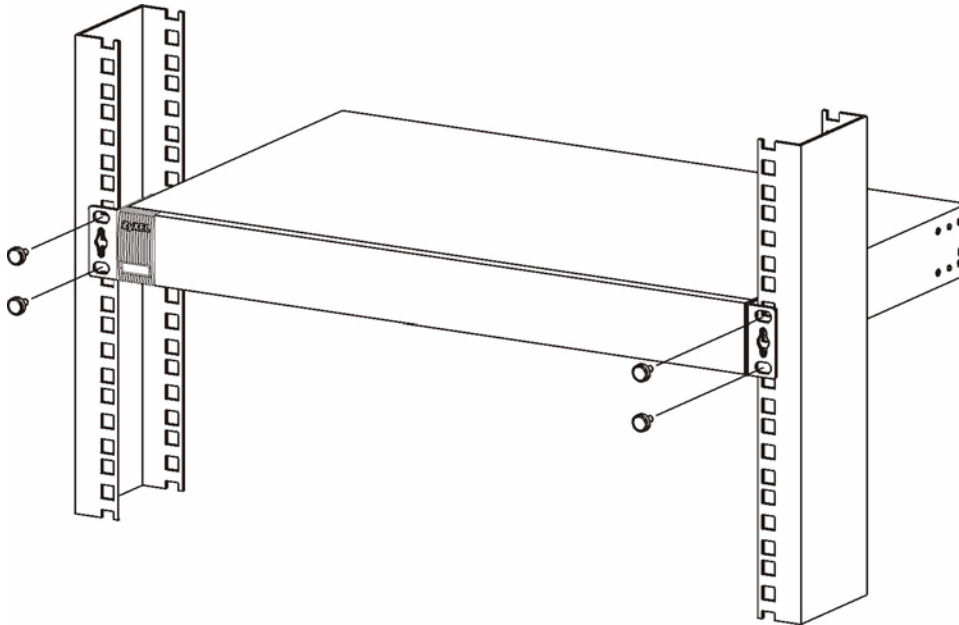
- 1 Position a mounting bracket on one side of the switch, lining up the four screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the switch.

**Figure 7** Attaching the Mounting Brackets

- 2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M3 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the switch.
- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to install the second mounting bracket on the other side of the switch.
- 4 You may now mount the switch on a rack. Proceed to the next section.

### 2.3.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

- 1 Position a mounting bracket (that is already attached to the switch) on one side of the rack, lining up the two screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the rack.

**Figure 8** Mounting the Switch on a Rack

- 2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M5 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the rack.
- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to attach the second mounting bracket on the other side of the rack.



# CHAPTER 3

## Hardware Overview

This chapter describes the front panel and rear panel of the switch and shows you how to make the hardware connections.

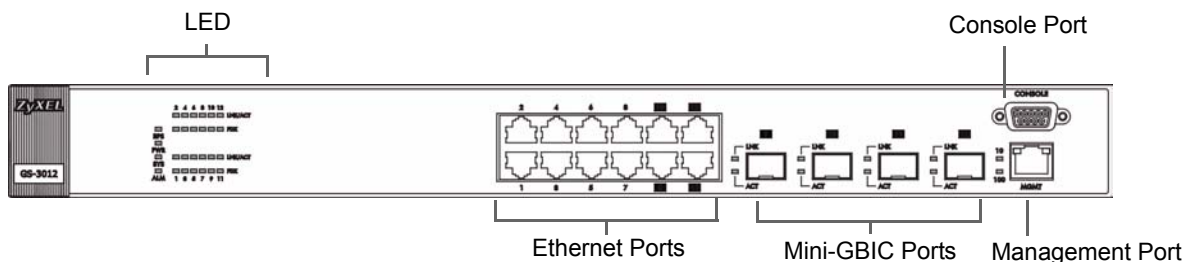
### 3.1 Safety Warnings

- The length of exposed (bare) power wire should not exceed 7mm.
- Do not use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement.
- Only a qualified technician should service or disassemble this device.

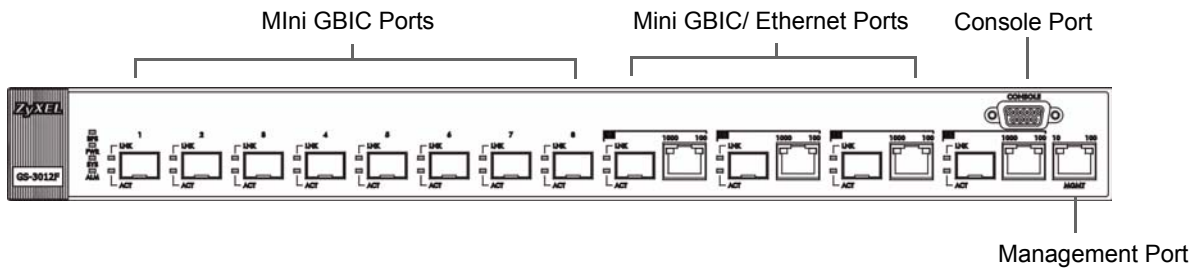
### 3.2 Front Panel

The following figure shows the front panel of the GS-3012. The front panel contains the switch LEDs, 12 RJ-45 gigabit ports, four mini GBIC ports and a console and management port for local management.

**Figure 9** Front Panel: GS-3012



The following figure shows the front panel of the GS-3012F. The front panel contains the switch LEDs, 12 mini GBIC ports, four RJ-45 Gigabit ports, and a console and management port for local management.

**Figure 10** Front Panel: GS-3012F

The following table describes the port labels on the front panel.

**Table 1** Front Panel Connections

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
12 100/1000 Mbps RJ-45 Ethernet Ports (GS-3012)	Connect these 1Gbps Electrical Ethernet ports to high-bandwidth backbone network Ethernet switches or use them to daisy-chain other switches.
Two 100/1000 Mbps RJ-45 Gigabit Ports (GS-3012F)	Connect these 1Gbps Electrical Ethernet ports to high-bandwidth backbone network Ethernet switches or use them to daisy-chain other switches.
Mini GBIC Ports	Use mini GBIC transceivers in these slots for fiber-optical connections to backbone Ethernet switches.
Console Port	The console port is for local configuration of the switch.
Management Port	Connect to a computer using an RJ-45 Ethernet cable for local configuration of the switch.

### 3.2.1 Console Port

For local management, you can use a computer with terminal emulation software configured to the following parameters:

- VT100
- Terminal emulation
- 9600 bps
- No parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit
- No flow control

Connect the male 9-pin end of the console cable to the console port of the GS-3012F switch. Connect the female end to a serial port (COM1, COM2 or other COM port) of your computer.

## 3.2.2 Gigabit Ports

The GS-3012 has 100/1000Mbps auto-negotiating, auto-crossover Gigabit ports. The speed of the Gigabit ports can be 100Mbps or 1000Mbps and the duplex mode can be half duplex (for 100 Mbps) or full duplex. The GS-3012's mini GBIC slots are paired with Gigabit ports.

The GS-3012F has 100/1000Mbps auto-negotiating, auto-crossover Gigabit ports. The speed of the Gigabit ports can be 100Mbps or 1000Mbps and the duplex mode can be half duplex (at 100 Mbps) or full duplex. The GS-3012F's Gigabit ports are paired with mini GBIC slots.

The switch uses up to one connection for each mini GBIC and Gigabit pair. The mini GBIC ports have priority over the Gigabit ports. This means that if a mini GBIC port and the corresponding Gigabit port are connected at the same time, the Gigabit port will be disabled.

When auto-negotiation is turned on, a Gigabit port negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode. If the peer Ethernet port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using half duplex mode. When the switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, a Gigabit port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer Ethernet port are the same in order to connect.

### 3.2.2.1 Default Ethernet Negotiation Settings

The factory default negotiation settings for the Gigabit ports on the GS-3012 are:

- Speed: Auto
- Duplex: Auto
- Flow control: Off
- Link Aggregation: Disabled

The factory default negotiation settings for the Gigabit ports on the GS-3012F are:

- Speed: Auto
- Duplex: Auto
- Flow control: Off
- Link Aggregation: Disabled

### 3.2.2.2 Auto-crossover

All ports are auto-crossover, that is auto-MDIX ports (Media Dependent Interface Crossover), so you may use either a straight-through Ethernet cable or crossover Ethernet cable for all Gigabit port connections. Auto-crossover ports automatically sense whether they need to function as crossover or straight ports, so crossover cables can connect both computers and switches/hubs.

### 3.2.3 Mini GBIC Slots

These are slots for mini GBIC (Gigabit Interface Converter) transceivers. A transceiver is a single unit that houses a transmitter and a receiver. The GS does not come with transceivers. You must use transceivers that comply with the Small Form-factor Pluggable (SFP) Transceiver MultiSource Agreement (MSA). See the SFF committee's INF-8074i specification Rev 1.0 for details.

You can change transceivers while the switch is operating. You can use different transceivers to connect to Ethernet switches with different types of fiber-optic connectors.

**Note:** To avoid possible eye injury, do not look into an operating fiber-optic module's connectors.

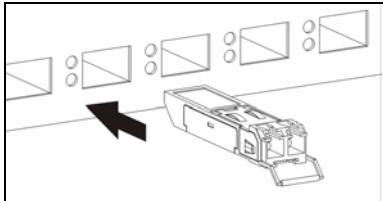
- Type: SFP connection interface
- Connection speed: 1 Gigabit per second (Gbps)

#### 3.2.3.1 Transceiver Installation

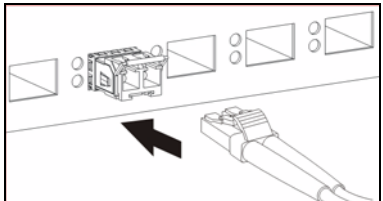
Use the following steps to install a mini GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

- 1 Insert the transceiver into the slot with the exposed section of PCB board facing down.
- 2 Press the transceiver firmly until it clicks into place.
- 3 The switch automatically detects the installed transceiver. Check the LEDs to verify that it is functioning properly.
- 4 Close the transceiver's latch (latch styles vary).
- 5 Connect the fiber optic cables to the transceiver.

**Figure 11** Transceiver Installation Example



**Figure 12** Connecting the Fiber Optic Cables

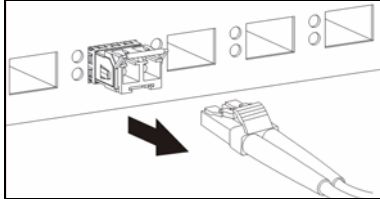


#### 3.2.3.2 Transceiver Removal

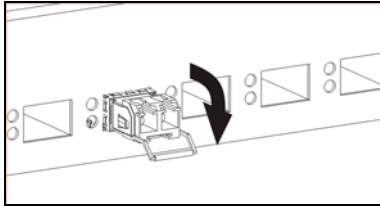
Use the following steps to remove a mini GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

- 1 Remove the fiber optic cables from the transceiver.
- 2 Open the transceiver's latch (latch styles vary).
- 3 Pull the transceiver out of the slot.

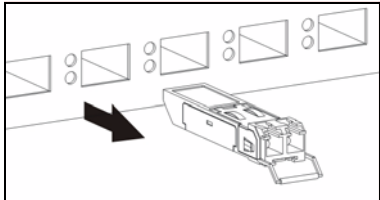
**Figure 13** Removing the Fiber Optic Cables



**Figure 14** Opening the Transceiver's Latch Example



**Figure 15** Transceiver Removal Example



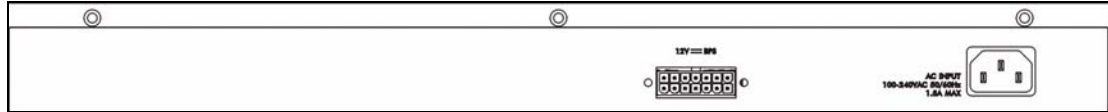
### 3.2.4 Management Port

The **MGNT** (management) port is used for local management. Connect directly to this port using an Ethernet cable. You can configure the switch via Telnet or the web configurator.

The default IP address of the management port is 192.168.0.1 with a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.

## 3.3 Rear Panel

The following figure shows the rear panel of the GS-3012(F). The rear panel contains the power receptacle and a connector for external backup power supply.

**Figure 16** Rear Panel

### 3.3.1 Power Connector

**Note:** Make sure you are using the correct power source as shown on the panel.

To connect the power to the AC power model, insert the female end of power cord to the power receptacle on the rear panel. Connect the other end of the supplied power cord to a 100~240VAC/1.5A power outlet. Make sure that no objects obstruct the airflow of the fans (located on the side of the unit).

The DC power model requires DC power supply input of -48 VDC to -60 VDC. The GS-3012 DC power model requires 1.88A Max. The GS-3012F requires 1.2A Max. To connect the power to the unit, insert the one end of the supplied power cord to the power receptacle on the rear panel and the other end to a power outlet.

## 3.4 Front Panel LEDs

After you connect the power to the switch, view the LEDs to ensure proper functioning of the switch and as an aid in troubleshooting.

**Table 2** Front Panel LED Descriptions

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
BPS	Green	Blinking	The system is receiving power from the backup power supply.
		On	The backup power supply is connected and active.
		Off	The backup power supply is not ready or not active.
PWR	Green	On	The system is turned on.
		Off	The system is off.
SYS	Green	Blinking	The system is rebooting and performing self-diagnostic tests.
		On	The system is on and functioning properly.
		Off	The power is off or the system is not ready/malfunctioning.
ALM	Red	On	There is a hardware failure.
		Off	The system is functioning normally.
GBIC Slots			
LNK	Green	On	The link to this port is up.
		Off	The link to this port is not connected.
ACT	Green	Blinking	This port is receiving or transmitting data.
Gigabit Ports			

**Table 2** Front Panel LED Descriptions (continued)

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
LNK/ACT (GS-3012)	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from an Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from an Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.	
FDX (GS-3012)	Amber	On	The Gigabit port is negotiating in full-duplex mode.
		Off	The Gigabit port is negotiating in half-duplex mode and no collisions are occurring.
1000 (GS-3012F)	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from an Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is down.
100 (GS-3012F)	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from an Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is down.
MGMT			
10	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from an Ethernet device.
		On	The port is connected at 10Mbps.
		Off	The port is not connected at 10Mbps or to an Ethernet device.
100	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from an Ethernet device.
		On	The port is connected at 100Mbps.
		Off	The port is not connected at 100Mbps or to an Ethernet device.

## 3.5 Configuring the Switch

You may use the embedded web configurator or command line interface to configure the switch. If you're using the web configurator, you need Internet Explorer 5.5 and later or Netscape Navigator 6 and later.

You can access the command line interface using a terminal emulation program on a computer connected to the switch console port (see [Section 3.2.1 on page 42](#)) or access the switch using Telnet.

The next part of this guide discusses configuring the switch using the web configurator.

# CHAPTER 4

## Introducing the Web Configurator

This section introduces the configuration and functions of the web configurator.

### 4.1 Introduction

The embedded web configurator allows you to manage the switch from anywhere through a standard browser such as Microsoft Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator.

**Note:** Use Internet Explorer 5.5 and later or Netscape Navigator 6 and later versions.

### 4.2 System Login

- 1 Start your Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator web browser.
- 2 Type “http://” and the IP address of the switch (for example, the default is 192.168.1.1) in the Location or Address field. Press **Enter**.
- 3 The login screen appears. The default username is **admin** and the associated default password is **1234**. The date and time display as shown if you have not configured a time server nor manually entered a time and date in the **General Setup** screen.

**Figure 17** Web Configurator: login



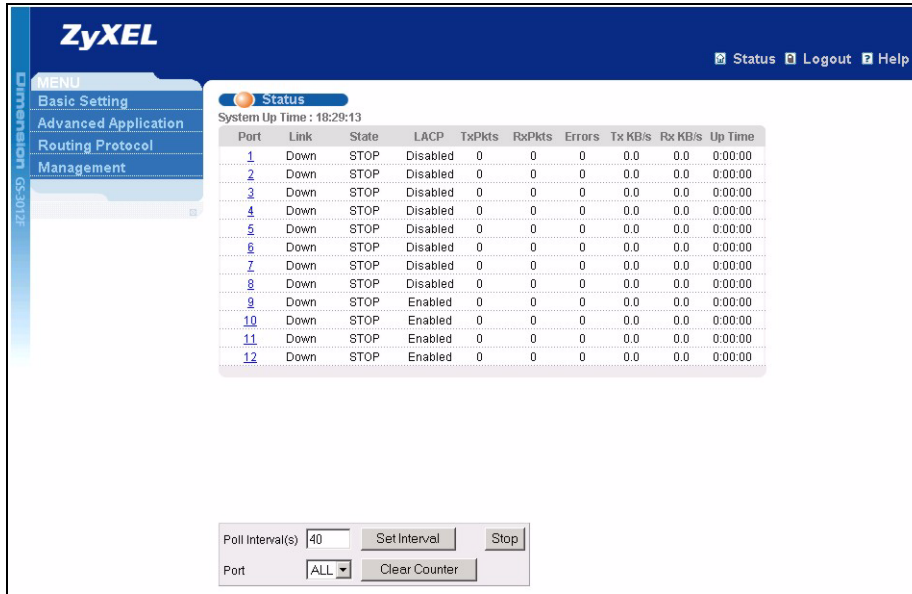
- 4 Click **OK** to view the first web configurator screen.



### 4.3 Status Screen

The **Status** screen is the first web configurator screen you see after you log in. The following figure shows the navigating components of a web configurator screen.

**Figure 18** Web Configurator Home Screen (Status)



In the navigation panel, click a main link to reveal a list of submenu links.

**Table 3** Navigation Panel Sub-links Overview

BASIC SETTING	ADVANCED APPLICATION	ROUTING PROTOCOL	MANAGEMENT
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System Info</li> <li>General Setup</li> <li>Switch Setup</li> <li>IP Setup</li> <li>Port Setup</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>VLAN</li> <li>Static MAC Forwarding</li> <li>Filtering</li> <li>Spanning Tree Protocol</li> <li>Bandwidth Control</li> <li>Broadcast Storm Control</li> <li>Mirroring</li> <li>Link Aggregation</li> <li>Port Authentication</li> <li>Port Security</li> <li>Access Control</li> <li>Queuing Method</li> <li>Classifier</li> <li>Policy Rule</li> <li>Multicast</li> <li>DHCP Relay</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Static Routing</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maintenance</li> <li>Diagnostic</li> <li>Syslog</li> <li>Cluster Management</li> <li>MAC Table</li> <li>ARP Table</li> </ul>

The following table lists the various web configurator screens within the sub-links.

**Table 4** Web Configurator Screen Sub-links Details

BASIC SETTING	ADVANCED APPLICATION	ROUTING PROTOCOL	MANAGEMENT
System Info General Setup Switch Setup IP Setup Port Setup	VLAN Status VLAN Port Setting Static VLAN Static MAC Forwarding Filtering Spanning Tree Protocol Status Spanning Tree Protocol Configuration Bandwidth Control Broadcast Storm Control Mirroring Link Aggregation Status Link Aggregation Configuration Port Authentication RADIUS 802.1x Port Security Access Control SNMP Logins Service Access Control Remote Management Queuing Method Classifier Policy Rule Multicast Multicast Status Multicast Setting IGMP Filtering Profile MVR DHCP Relay	Static Routing	Maintenance Firmware Upgrade Restore Configuration  Backup Configuration Load Factory Default Reboot System Diagnostic Syslog Syslog Setup Syslog Server Setup Cluster Management Status Cluster Management Configuration MAC Table ARP Table

The following table summarizes these sub-links in the navigation panel.

**Table 5** Navigation Panel Sub-link Descriptions

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Basic Setting	
System Info	This link takes you to a screen that displays general system and hardware monitoring information.

**Table 5** Navigation Panel Sub-link Descriptions (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure general identification information about the switch.
Switch Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can set up global switch parameters such as VLAN type, MAC address learning, IGMP snooping, GARP and priority queues.
IP Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the IP address, subnet mask (necessary for switch management) and DNS (domain name server).
Port Setup	This link takes you to screens where you can configure settings for individual switch ports.
Advanced Application	
VLAN	This link takes you to screens where you can configure port-based or 802.1Q VLAN (depending on what you configured in the <b>Switch Setup</b> menu).
Static MAC Forwarding	This link takes you to screens where you can configure static MAC addresses for a port. These static MAC addresses do not age out.
Filtering	This link takes you to a screen to set up filtering rules.
Spanning Tree Protocol	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the STP to prevent network loops.
Bandwidth Control	This link takes you to screens where you can cap the maximum bandwidth allowed from specified source(s) to specified destination(s).
Broadcast Storm Control	This link takes you to a screen to set up broadcast filters.
Mirroring	This link takes you to screens where you can copy traffic from one port or ports to another port in order that you can examine the traffic from the first port without interference
Link Aggregation	This link takes you to a screen where you can logically trunk physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.
Port Authentication	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service), a protocol for user authentication that allows you to use an external server to validate an unlimited number of users.
Port Security	This link takes you to a screen where you can activate MAC address learning and set the maximum number of MAC addresses to learn on a port.
Access Control	This link takes you to screens where you can change the system login password and configure SNMP and remote management.
Queuing Method	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure SPQ or WRR with associated queue weights for each port.
Classifier	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure classifiers.
Policy Rule	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure policy rules.
Multicast	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure various multicast features and create multicast VLANs.
DHCP Relay	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure DHCP relay information.
Routing Protocol	
Static Routing	This link takes you to screens where you can configure static routes. A static route defines how the switch should forward traffic by configuring the TCP/IP parameters manually.
Management	

**Table 5** Navigation Panel Sub-link Descriptions (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Maintenance	This link takes you to screens where you can perform firmware and configuration file maintenance as well as reboot the system.
Diagnostic	This link takes you to screens where you can view system logs and test port(s).
Syslog	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the device's system logging settings.
Cluster Management	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure clustering management and view its status.
MAC Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC addresses (and types) of devices attached to what ports and VLAN IDs.
ARP Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC addresses – IP address resolution table.

### 4.3.1 Change Your Password

After you log in for the first time, it is recommended you change the default Administrator password in the **Logins** screen. Click **Advanced Application**, **Access Control** and then **Logins** to display the next screen.

**Figure 19** Web Configurator: Change Password at Login

**Logins** Access Control

Administrator

Old Password

New Password

Retype to confirm

**Please record your new password whenever you change it. The system will lock you out if you have forgotten your password.**

**Edit Logins**

Login	User Name	Password	Retype to confirm
1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Apply Cancel

## 4.4 Switch Lockout

You are locked out from managing the switch if another administrator is currently logged in. You must wait until he/she has logged out before you can log in.

Moreover, you could lock yourself (and all others) out from the switch by:

- 1 Deleting the management VLAN (default is VLAN 1).

- 2 Deleting all port-based VLANs with the CPU port as a member. The “CPU port” is the management port of the switch.
- 3 Filtering all traffic to the CPU port.
- 4 Disabling all ports.
- 5 Assigning minimum bandwidth to the CPU port. If you limit bandwidth to the CPU port, you may find that the switch performs sluggishly or not at all.

**Note:** Be careful not to lock yourself and others out of the switch.

## 4.5 Resetting the Switch

If you lock yourself (and others) from the switch or forget the switch password, you will need to reload the factory-default configuration file.

Uploading the factory-default configuration file replaces the current configuration file with the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all previous configurations and the speed of the console port will be reset to the default of 9600bps with 8 data bit, no parity, one stop bit and flow control set to none. The password will also be reset to “1234” and the IP address to 192.168.1.1.

To upload the configuration file, do the following:

- 1 Connect to the console port using a computer with terminal emulation software. See the chapter on hardware connections for details.
- 2 Disconnect and reconnect the switch’s power to begin a session. When you reconnect the switch’s power, you will see the initial screen.
- 3 When you see the message “Press any key to enter Debug Mode within 3 seconds” press any key to enter debug mode.
- 4 Type `atlc` after the “Enter Debug Mode” message.
- 5 Wait for the “Starting XMODEM upload” message before activating XMODEM upload on your terminal.
- 6 After a successful configuration file upload, type `atgo` to finish starting the switch.

**Figure 20** Resetting the Switch: Via Console Port

```

Bootbase Version: V1.0 | 04/25/2003 10:01:06
RAM: Size = 32768 Kbytes
FLASH: Intel 32M
ZyNOS Version: V3.60 (ABN.5) | 03/01/2006 09:53:18

Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds.
.....
Enter Debug Mode
ras> atlc
Starting XMODEM upload (CRC mode)....
CCCCCCCCCCCCCCCC
Total 393216 bytes received.
Erasing..
.....
OK
ras> atgo

```

The switch is now reinitialized with a default configuration file including the default password of “1234”.

### 4.5.1 Logging Out of the Web Configurator

Click **Logout** in a screen to exit the web configurator. You have to log in with your password again after you log out. This is recommended after you finish a management session both for security reasons and so as you don't lock out other switch administrators.

**Figure 21** Web Configurator: Logout Screen

### 4.5.2 Help

The web configurator's online help has descriptions of individual screens and some supplementary information.

Click the **Help** link from a web configurator screen to view an online help description of that screen.

# CHAPTER 5

## System Status and Port Details

This chapter describes the system status (web configurator home page) and port details screens.

### 5.1 About System Statistics and Information

The home screen of the web configurator displays a port statistical summary with links to each port showing statistical details.

### 5.2 Port Status Summary

To view the port statistics, click **Status** in all web configurator screens to display the **Status** screen as shown next.

**Figure 22** Status

**Status**  
System Up Time : 16:55:52

Port	Link	State	LACP	TxPkts	RxPkts	Errors	Tx KB/s	Rx KB/s	Up Time
1	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
2	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
3	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
4	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
5	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
6	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
7	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
8	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
9	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
10	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
11	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
12	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00

Poll Interval(s)

Port

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 6** Status

<b>LABEL</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
System up Time	This field shows how long the system has been running since the last time it was started.
Port	This identifies the Gigabit port. Click a port number to display the <b>Port Details</b> screen (refer to <a href="#">Figure 23 on page 57</a> ).
Link	This field displays the speed (either <b>10M</b> for 10Mbps, <b>100M</b> for 100Mbps or <b>1000M</b> for 1000Mbps) and the duplex ( <b>F</b> for full duplex or <b>H</b> for half duplex).
State	This field displays the STP state of the port. See the <i>Spanning Tree Protocol</i> chapter for details on STP port states.
LACP	This fields displays whether the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) has been enabled on the port.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port.
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port.
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.
Tx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second transmitted on this port.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time in hours, minutes and seconds the port has been up.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking <b>Set Interval</b> .
Stop	Click <b>Stop</b> to halt system statistic polling.
Clear Counter	Select a port from the <b>Port</b> drop-down list box and then click <b>Clear Counter</b> to erase the recorded statistical information for that port.

## 5.2.1 Port Details

Click a number in the **Port** column in the **Status** screen to display individual port statistics. Use this screen to check status and detailed performance data about an individual port on the switch.



**Figure 23** Status: Port Details

Port Details		Status
Port Info	Port NO.	1
	Link	Down
	Status	STOP
	LACP	Disabled
	TxPkts	0
	RxPkts	0
	Errors	0
	Tx KBs/s	0.0
	Rx KBs/s	0.0
	Up Time	0:00:00
<b>TX Packet</b>	<b>TX Packets</b>	0
	Multicast	0
	Broadcast	0
	Pause	0
	Tagged	0
<b>RX Packet</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	0
	Multicast	0
	Broadcast	0
	Pause	0
	Control	0
<b>TX Collision</b>	<b>Single</b>	0
	Multiple	0
	Excessive	0
	Late	0
<b>Error Packet</b>	<b>RX CRC</b>	0
	Length	0
	Runt	0
<b>Distribution</b>	64	0
	65 to 127	0
	128 to 255	0
	256 to 511	0
	512 to 1023	0
	1024 to 1518	0
	Giant	0
Poll Interval(s)		40
		Set Interval
		Stop

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 7** Status: Port Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port Info	
Port NO.	This field identifies the Gigabit port described in this screen.
Link	This field shows whether the port connection is down, and the speed/duplex mode.
Status	This field shows the training state of the ports. The states are <b>FORWARDING</b> (forwarding), which means the link is functioning normally or <b>STOP</b> (the port is stopped to break a loop or duplicate path).
LACP	This field shows if LACP is enabled on this port or not.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.
Tx KB/s	This field shows the number kilobytes per second transmitted on this port.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.

**Table 7** Status: Port Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time the connection has been up.
Tx Packet The following fields display detailed information about frames transmitted.	
TX Packets	This field shows the number of good frames (unicast, multicast and broadcast) transmitted.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast frames transmitted.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast frames transmitted.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause frames transmitted.
Tagged	This field shows the number of frames with VLAN tags transmitted.
Rx Packet The following fields display detailed information about frames received.	
RX Packets	This field shows the number of good frames (unicast, multicast and broadcast) received.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast frames received.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast frames received.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause frames received.
Control	This field shows the number of control received (including those with CRC error) but it does not include the 802.3x Pause frames.
TX Collision The following fields display information on collisions while transmitting.	
Single	This is a count of successfully transmitted frames for which transmission is inhibited by exactly one collision.
Multiple	This is a count of successfully transmitted frames for which transmission was inhibited by more than one collision.
Excessive	This is a count of frames for which transmission failed due to excessive collisions. Excessive collision is defined as the number of maximum collisions before the retransmission count is reset.
Late	This is the number of times a late collision is detected, that is, after 512 bits of the frame have already been transmitted.
Error Packet The following fields display detailed information about frames received that were in error.	
RX CRC	This field shows the number of frames received with CRC (Cyclic Redundant Check) error(s).
Length	This field shows the number of frames received with a length that was out of range.
Runt	This field shows the number of frames received that were too short (shorter than 64 octets), including the ones with CRC errors.
Distribution This field shows the distribution of good packets (unicast, multicast and broadcast) received.	
64	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were 64 octets in length.
65-127	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 65 and 127 octets in length.
128-255	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 128 and 255 octets in length.
256-511	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 256 and 511 octets in length.

**Table 7** Status: Port Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
512-1023	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 512 and 1023 octets in length.
1024-1518	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1024 and 1518 octets in length.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking <b>Set Interval</b> .
Stop	Click <b>Stop</b> to stop port statistic polling.

# CHAPTER 6

## Basic Setting

This chapter describes how to configure the **System Info**, **General Setup**, **Switch Setup**, **IP Setup** and **Port Setup** screens.

### 6.1 Introducing the Basic Setting Screens

The **System Info** screen displays general switch information (such as firmware version number) and hardware polling information (such as fan speeds). The **General Setup** screen allows you to configure general switch identification information. The **General Setup** screen also allows you to set the system time manually or get the current time and date from an external server when you turn on your switch. The real time is then displayed in the switch logs. The **Switch Setup** screen allows you to set up and configure global switch features. The **IP Setup** screen allows you to configure a switch IP address, subnet mask and DNS (domain name server) for management purposes.

### 6.2 System Information

In the navigation panel, click **Basic Setting** and then **System Info** to display the screen as shown. You can check the firmware version number and monitor the switch temperature, fan speeds and voltage in this screen.

Figure 24 System Info

System Info					
System Name	GS-3012F				
ZyNOS FW Version	V3.60(ABN.5)b1   03/01/2006				
Ethernet Address	00:13:49:6a:c6:55				
Hardware Monitor					
Temperature Unit	C				
Temperature(C)	Current	MAX	MIN	Threshold	Status
MAC	32.0	32.0	31.0	65.0	Normal
CPU	28.5	29.0	28.0	65.0	Normal
PHY	29.0	29.5	28.5	65.0	Normal
FAN Speed (RPM)	Current	MAX	MIN	Threshold	Status
FAN1	5859	5908	5810	4500	Normal
FAN2	5580	5716	5536	4500	Normal
FAN3	5859	5908	5810	4500	Normal
Voltage (V)	Current	MAX	MIN	Threshold	Status
2.5	2.608	2.608	2.608	+/- 8%	Normal
1.25	1.296	1.296	1.280	+/- 11%	Normal
3.3	3.392	3.392	3.376	+/- 7%	Normal
12	12.160	12.160	12.099	+/- 11%	Normal
5	5.053	5.053	5.053	+/- 7%	Normal
1.3	1.328	1.328	1.328	+/- 10%	Normal
1.25	1.296	1.296	1.280	+/- 8%	Normal
Poll Interval(s)	40	Set Interval	Stop		

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 8 System Info

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	This field displays the switch's model name.
ZyNOS F/W Version	This field displays the version number of the switch's current firmware including the date created.
Ethernet Address	This field refers to the Ethernet MAC (Media Access Control) address of the switch.
Hardware Monitor	
Temperature Unit	The switch has temperature sensors that are capable of detecting and reporting if the temperature rises above the threshold. You may choose the temperature unit (Centigrade or Fahrenheit) in this field.
Temperature	<b>MAC</b> , <b>CPU</b> and <b>PHY</b> refer to the location of the temperature sensors on the switch printed circuit board.
Current	This field displays the current temperature measured at this sensor.
MAX	This field displays the maximum temperature measured at this sensor.
MIN	This field displays the minimum temperature measured at this sensor.
Threshold	This field displays the upper temperature limit at this sensor.
Status	This field displays <b>Normal</b> for temperatures below the threshold and <b>Error</b> for those above.
Fan speed (RPM)	A properly functioning fan is an essential component (along with a sufficiently ventilated, cool operating environment) in order for the device to stay within the temperature threshold. Each fan has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the fan speed falls below the threshold shown.
Current	This field displays this fan's current speed in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM)

**Table 8** System Info (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAX	This field displays this fan's maximum speed measured in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
MIN	This field displays this fan's minimum speed measured in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
Threshold	This field displays the minimum speed at which a normal fan should work.
Status	<b>Normal</b> indicates that this fan is functioning above the minimum speed. <b>Error</b> indicates that this fan is functioning below the minimum speed.
Voltage (V)	The power supply for each voltage has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the voltage falls out of the tolerance range.
Current	This is the current voltage reading.
MAX	This field displays the maximum voltage measured at this point.
MIN	This field displays the minimum voltage measured at this point.
Threshold	This field displays the minimum voltage at which the switch should work.
Status	<b>Normal</b> indicates that the voltage is within an acceptable operating range at this point; otherwise <b>Error</b> is displayed.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking <b>Set Interval</b> .
Stop	Click <b>Stop</b> to halt statistic polling.

## 6.3 General Setup

Click **Basic Setting** and **General Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 25** General Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 9** General Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	Choose a descriptive name for identification purposes. This name consists of up to 32 printable characters; spaces are allowed.
Location	Enter the geographic location (up to 32 characters) of your switch.
Contact Person's Name	Enter the name (up to 32 characters) of the person in charge of this switch.
Login Precedence	<p>Configure the local user accounts in the <b>Access Control Logins</b> screen. The RADIUS is an external server. Use this drop-down list box to select which database the switch should use (first) to authenticate a user.</p> <p>Before you specify the priority, make sure you have set up the corresponding database correctly first.</p> <p>Select <b>Local Only</b> to have the switch just check the local user accounts configured in the <b>Access Control Logins</b> screen.</p> <p>Select <b>Local then RADIUS</b> to have the switch check the local user accounts configured in the <b>Access Control Logins</b> screen. If the user name is not found, the switch then checks the user database on the specified RADIUS server. You need to configure the <b>Port Authentication Radius</b> screen first.</p> <p>Select <b>RADIUS Only</b> to have the switch just check the user database on the specified RADIUS server for a login username and password.</p>
Use Time Server When Bootup	<p>Enter the time service protocol that a timeserver sends when you turn on the switch. Not all timeservers support all protocols, so you may have to use trial and error to find a protocol that works. The main differences between them are the time format. When you select the <b>Daytime (RFC 867)</b> format, the switch displays the day, month, year and time with no time zone adjustment. When you use this format, it is recommended that you use a Daytime timeserver within your geographical time zone.</p> <p>Time (RFC-868) format displays a 4-byte integer giving the total number of seconds since 1970/1/1 at 0:0:0.</p> <p>NTP (RFC-1305) is similar to Time (RFC-868)</p> <p><b>None</b> is the default value. Enter the time manually. Each time you turn on the switch, the time and date will be reset to 1970-1-1 0:0.</p>
Time Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of your timeserver. The switch searches for the timeserver for up to 60 seconds. If you select a timeserver that is unreachable, then this screen will appear locked for 60 seconds. Please wait.
Current Time	This field displays the time you open this menu (or refresh the menu).
New Time (hh:min:ss)	Enter the new time in hour, minute and second format. The new time then appears in the <b>Current Time</b> field after you click <b>Apply</b> .
Current Date	This field displays the date you open this menu.
New Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	Enter the new date in year, month and day format. The new date then appears in the <b>Current Date</b> field after you click <b>Apply</b> .
Time Zone	Select the time difference between UTC (Universal Time Coordinated, formerly known as GMT, Greenwich Mean Time) and your time zone from the drop-down list box.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the settings.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to start configuring the screen again.

## 6.4 Introduction to VLANs

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.

In MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) applications, VLAN is vital in providing isolation and security among the subscribers. When properly configured, VLAN prevents one subscriber from accessing the network resources of another on the same LAN, thus a user will not see the printers and hard disks of another user in the same building.

VLAN also increases network performance by limiting broadcasts to a smaller and more manageable logical broadcast domain. In traditional switched environments, all broadcast packets go to each and every individual port. With VLAN, all broadcasts are confined to a specific broadcast domain.

Note that VLAN is unidirectional; it only governs outgoing traffic.

See the chapter on VLAN for information on port-based and 802.1Q tagged VLANs.

## 6.5 Switch Setup Screen

Click **Basic Setting** and then **Switch Setup** in the navigation panel display the screen as shown. The VLAN setup screens change depending on whether you choose **802.1Q** or **Port Based** in the **VLAN Type** field in this screen. Refer to the chapter on VLANs.

**Figure 26** Switch Setup

Switch Setup	
VLAN Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 802.1Q <input type="radio"/> Port Based
Bridge Control Protocol Transparency	Active <input type="checkbox"/>
MAC Address Learning	Aging Time: 300 seconds
	Join Timer: 200 milliseconds
	Leave Timer: 600 milliseconds
	Leave All Timer: 10000 milliseconds
Priority Queue Assignment	level7: 7
	level6: 6
	level5: 5
	level4: 4
	level3: 3
	level2: 1
	level1: 0
	level0: 2
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 10** Switch Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Choose <b>802.1Q</b> or <b>Port Based</b> . The <b>VLAN Setup</b> screen changes depending on whether you choose <b>802.1Q VLAN Type</b> or <b>Port Based VLAN Type</b> in this screen. See <a href="#">Section 6.4 on page 64</a> and the chapter on VLAN for more information on VLANs.
Bridge Control Protocol Transparency	Select <b>Active</b> to allow the switch to handle bridging control protocols (STP for example). You also need to define how to treat a BPDU in the <b>Port Setup</b> screen.
MAC Address Learning	MAC address learning reduces outgoing traffic broadcasts. For MAC address learning to occur on a port, the port must be active.
Aging Time	Enter a time from 10 to 3000 seconds. This is how long all dynamically learned MAC addresses remain in the MAC address table before they age out (and must be relearned).
<p><b>GARP Timer</b></p> <p>Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a <b>Join</b> message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a <b>Leave</b> message. A <b>Leave All</b> message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values. See the chapter on VLAN setup for more background information.</p>	
Join Timer	Join Timer sets the duration of the Join Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a Join Period timer. The allowed Join Time range is between 100 and 65535 milliseconds; the default is 200 milliseconds. See the chapter on VLAN setup for more background information.
Leave Timer	Leave Timer sets the duration of the Leave Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave Period timer. Leave Time must be two times larger than Join Timer. The default is 600 milliseconds.
Leave All Timer	Leave All Timer sets the duration of the Leave All Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave All Period timer. Leave All Timer must be larger than Leave Timer. The default is 10000 milliseconds.
<p>Priority Queue Assignment IEEE 802.1p defines up to eight separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service. Frames without an explicit priority tag are given the default priority of the ingress port. Use the next two fields to configure the priority level-to-physical queue mapping.</p> <p>The switch has eight physical queues that you can map to the eight priority levels. On the switch, traffic assigned to higher index queues gets through faster while traffic in lower index queues is dropped if the network is congested.</p> <p>See also <b>Queuing Method</b> and <b>802.1p Priority in Port Setup</b> for related information.</p>	
<p>Priority Level (The following descriptions are based on the traffic types defined in the IEEE 802.1d standard (which incorporates the 802.1p).</p>	
Level 7	Typically used for network control traffic such as router configuration messages.
Level 6	Typically used for voice traffic that is especially sensitive to jitter (jitter is the variations in delay).
Level 5	Typically used for video that consumes high bandwidth and is sensitive to jitter.
Level 4	Typically used for controlled load, latency-sensitive traffic such as SNA (Systems Network Architecture) transactions.
Level 3	Typically used for “excellent effort” or better than best effort and would include important business traffic that can tolerate some delay.
Level 2	This is for “spare bandwidth”.
Level 1	This is typically used for non-critical “background” traffic such as bulk transfers that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users.

**Table 10** Switch Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Level 0	Typically used for best-effort traffic.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 6.6 IP Setup

Use the **IP Setup** screen to configure the switch IP address, default gateway device, the default domain name server and the management VLAN ID. The default gateway specifies the IP address of the default gateway (next hop) for outgoing traffic.

**Figure 27** IP Setup

**IP Setup**

Domain Name Server: 0.0.0.0

Default Management:  In-band  Out-of-band

**In-band Management IP Address**

DHCP Client

Static IP Address

IP Address: 192.168.1.1

IP Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Default Gateway: 0.0.0.0

VID: 1

**Out-of-band Management IP Address**

IP Address: 192.168.0.1

IP Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Default Gateway: 0.0.0.0

Apply Cancel

**In-band IP Addresses**

IP Address: 0.0.0.0

IP Subnet Mask: 0.0.0.0

VID:

Default Gateway: 0.0.0.0

Add Cancel

Index	IP Address	IP Subnet Mask	VID	Default Gateway	Delete

Delete Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 11** IP Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Domain Name Server	DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. Enter a domain name server IP address in order to be able to use a domain name instead of an IP address.
Default Management	<p>Select which traffic flow (<b>In-Band</b> or <b>Out-of-band</b>) the switch use to send packets with an unknown source or originate from the switch itself (such as SNMP traps).</p> <p>Select <b>Out-of-band</b> to have the switch send the packets to the out-of-band management port. This means that device(s) connected to the other port(s) do not receive these packets.</p> <p>Select <b>In-Band</b> to have the switch send the packets to all ports except the out-of-band management port. This means that device(s) connected to out-of-band management port do not receive these packets.</p>
In-Band Management IP Address	
DHCP Client	Select this option if you have a DHCP server that can assign the switch an IP address, subnet mask, a default gateway IP address and a domain name server IP address automatically.
Static IP Address	Select this option if you don't have a DHCP server or if you wish to assign static IP address information to the switch. You need to fill in the following fields when you select this option.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of your switch in dotted decimal notation for example 192.168.1.1.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask of your switch in dotted decimal notation for example 255.255.255.0.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation, for example 192.168.1.254.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number associated with the switch IP address. This is the VLAN ID of the CPU and is used for management only. The default is "1". All ports, by default, are fixed members of this "management VLAN" in order to manage the device from any port. If a port is not a member of this VLAN, then users on that port cannot access the device. To access the switch make sure the port that you are connected to is a member of Management VLAN.
Out-of-band Management IP Address	
IP Address	<p>Enter the IP address of the management port in dotted decimal notation for example 192.168.0.1.</p> <p>If you change this IP address, make sure the computer connected to this management port is in the same subnet before accessing the GS.</p>
Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask in dotted decimal notation for example 255.255.255.0.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation, for example 192.168.1.254.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring the fields again.
<p>In-band IP Addresses</p> <p>You can create up to 128 IP addresses, which are used to access and manage the switch from the ports belonging to the pre-defined VLAN(s). You must configure a VLAN first.</p>	
IP Address	Enter the IP address for managing the switch by the members of the VLAN specified in the <b>VID</b> field below.

**Table 11** IP Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask in dotted decimal notation.
VID	Type the VLAN group identification number.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save the new rule to the switch. It then displays in the summary table at the bottom of the screen.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address.
IP Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Default Gateway	This field displays the IP address of the default gateway.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column, then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the selected checkboxes in the <b>Delete</b> column.

## 6.7 Port Setup

Click **Basic Setting** and then **Port Setup** in the navigation panel to enter the port configuration screen.

**Figure 28** Port Setup

Port	Active	Name	Type	Speed / Duplex	Flow Control	802.1p Priority	BPDU Control
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port01	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port02	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port03	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port04	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port05	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port06	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port07	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port08	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port09	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port10	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port11	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
12	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port12	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 12** Port Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the port index number.
Active	Select this check box to enable a port. The factory default for all ports is enabled. A port must be enabled for data transmission to occur.
Name	Enter a descriptive name that identifies this port.
Type	This field displays <b>10/100M</b> (Ethernet/Fast Ethernet), <b>10/100/1000M</b> (Gigabit) or <b>1000M</b> (GBIC).
Speed/ Duplex	<p>Select the speed and the duplex mode of the connection on this port. Choices are <b>Auto</b>, <b>10M/Half Duplex</b>, <b>10M/Full Duplex</b>, <b>100M/Half Duplex</b>, <b>100M/Full Duplex</b> and <b>1000M/Full Duplex</b> (for Gigabit ports only).</p> <p>Selecting <b>Auto</b> (auto-negotiation) makes one Gigabit port able to negotiate with a peer automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support. When auto-negotiation is turned on, a Gigabit port on the switch negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode. If the peer Ethernet port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using half duplex mode. When the switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, a Gigabit port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer Ethernet port are the same in order to connect.</p>
Flow Control	<p>A concentration of traffic on a port decreases port bandwidth and overflows buffer memory causing packet discards and frame losses. <b>Flow Control</b> is used to regulate transmission of signals to match the bandwidth of the receiving port.</p> <p>The switch uses IEEE802.3x flow control in full duplex mode and backpressure flow control in half duplex mode.</p> <p>IEEE802.3x flow control is used in full duplex mode to send a pause signal to the sending port, causing it to temporarily stop sending signals when the receiving port memory buffers fill.</p> <p>Back Pressure flow control is typically used in half duplex mode to send a "collision" signal to the sending port (mimicking a state of packet collision) causing the sending port to temporarily stop sending signals and resend later. Select this option to enable flow control.</p>
802.1P Priority	This priority value is added to incoming frames without a (802.1p) priority queue tag. See <b>Priority Queue Assignment</b> in <b>Switch Setup</b> and <b>Queuing Method</b> for related information.
BPDU Control	<p>Configure the way to treat BPDUs received on this port.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must activate bridging control protocol transparency in the Switch Setup screen first.</p> <p>Select <b>Peer</b> to process any BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) received on this port.            Select <b>Tunnel</b> to forward BPDUs received on this port.            Select <b>Discard</b> to drop any BPDU received on this port.            Select <b>Network</b> to process a BPDU with no VLAN tag and forward a tagged BPDU.</p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# CHAPTER 7

## VLAN

The type of screen you see here depends on the **VLAN Type** you selected in the **Switch Setup** screen. This chapter shows you how to configure 802.1Q tagged and port-based VLANs. See the General, Switch and IP Setup chapter for more information.

### 7.1 Introduction to IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN

Tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges - they are not confined to the switch on which they were created. The VLANs can be created statically by hand or dynamically through GVRP. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches need to process the frame across the network. A tagged frame is four bytes longer than an untagged frame and contains two bytes of TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier, residing within the type/length field of the Ethernet frame) and two bytes of TCI (Tag Control Information, starts after the source address field of the Ethernet frame).

The CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) is a single-bit flag, always set to zero for Ethernet switches. If a frame received at an Ethernet port has a CFI set to 1, then that frame should not be forwarded as it is to an untagged port. The remaining twelve bits define the VLAN ID, giving a possible maximum number of 4,096 VLANs. Note that user priority and VLAN ID are independent of each other. A frame with VID (VLAN Identifier) of null (0) is called a priority frame, meaning that only the priority level is significant and the default VID of the ingress port is given as the VID of the frame. Of the 4096 possible VIDs, a VID of 0 is used to identify priority frames and value 4095 (FFF) is reserved, so the maximum possible VLAN configurations are 4,094

TPID 2 Bytes	User Priority 3 Bits	CFI 1 Bit	VLAN ID 12 bits
-----------------	-------------------------	--------------	--------------------

#### 7.1.1 Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames

Each port on the switch is capable of passing tagged or untagged frames. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch, the switch first decides where to forward the frame and then strips off the VLAN tag. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch, the switch first decides where to forward the frame, and then inserts a VLAN tag reflecting the ingress port's default VID. The default PVID is VLAN 1 for all ports, but this can be changed.

## 7.1.2 Automatic VLAN Registration

GARP and GVRP are the protocols used to automatically register VLAN membership across switches.

### 7.1.2.1 GARP

GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) allows network switches to register and de-register attribute values with other GARP participants within a bridged LAN. GARP is a protocol that provides a generic mechanism for protocols that serve a more specific application, for example, GVRP.

### 7.1.2.2 GARP Timers

Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a Join message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a Leave message. A Leave All message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values.

### 7.1.2.3 GVRP

GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Enable this function to permit VLANs groups beyond the local switch.

Please refer to the following table for common IEEE 802.1Q VLAN terminology.

**Table 13** IEEE 802.1Q VLAN terminology

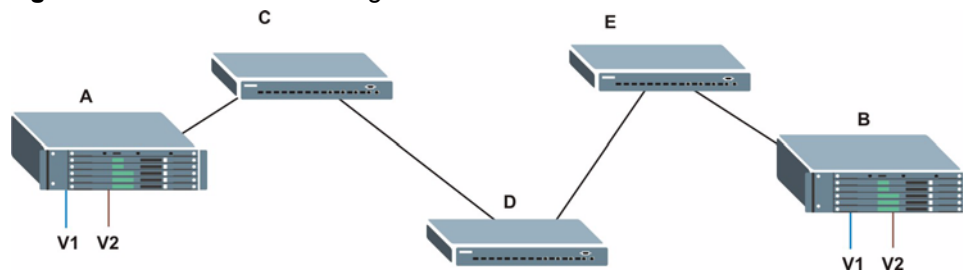
VLAN PARAMETER	TERM	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Permanent VLAN	This is a static VLAN created manually.
	Dynamic VLAN	This is a VLAN configured by a GVRP registration/deregistration process.
VLAN Administrative Control	Registration Fixed	Fixed registration ports are permanent VLAN members.
	Registration Forbidden	Ports with registration forbidden are forbidden to join the specified VLAN.
	Normal Registration	Ports dynamically join a VLAN using GVRP.
VLAN Tag Control	Tagged	Ports belonging to the specified VLAN tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
	Untagged	Ports belonging to the specified don't tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
VLAN Port	Port VID	This is the VLAN ID assigned to untagged frames that this port received.
	Acceptable frame type	You may choose to accept both tagged and untagged incoming frames or just tagged incoming frames on a port.
	Ingress filtering	If set, the switch discards incoming frames for VLANs that do not have this port as a member

### 7.1.3 Port VLAN Trunking

Enable **VLAN Trunking** on a port to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through that port. This is useful if you want to set up VLAN groups on end devices without having to configure the same VLAN groups on intermediary devices.

Refer to the following figure. Suppose you want to create VLAN groups 1 and 2 (V1 and V2) on devices A and B. Without **VLAN Trunking**, you must configure VLAN groups 1 and 2 on all intermediary switches C, D and E; otherwise they will drop frames with unknown VLAN group tags. However, with **VLAN Trunking** enabled on a port(s) in each intermediary switch you only need to create VLAN groups in the end devices (A and B). C, D and E automatically allow frames with VLAN group tags 1 and 2 (VLAN groups that are unknown to those switches) to pass through their VLAN trunking port(s).

**Figure 29** Port VLAN Trunking

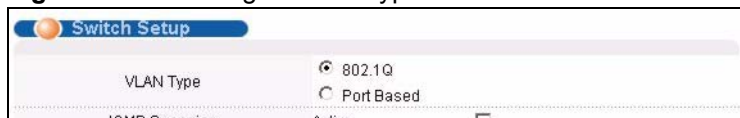


## 7.2 802.1Q VLAN

Follow the steps below to set the **802.1Q VLAN Type** on the switch.

- 1 Select **802.1Q** as the **VLAN Type** in the **Switch Setup** screen (under **Basic Setting**) and click **Apply**.

**Figure 30** Selecting a VLAN Type



- 2 Click **VLAN** under **Advanced Application** to display the **VLAN Status** screen as shown next.



**Figure 31** 802.1Q VLAN Status

VLAN Status		VLAN Port Setting						Static VLAN	
The Number Of VLAN = 1									
Index	VID	Port Number						Elapsed Time	Status
		2	4	6	8	10	12		
1	1	1	3	5	7	9	11	13:47:22	Static
		U	U	U	U	U	U		
		U	U	U	U	U	U		

Poll Interval(s)	<input type="text" value="40"/>	<input type="button" value="Set Interval"/>	<input type="button" value="Stop"/>
Change Pages	<input type="button" value="Previous Page"/>	<input type="button" value="Next Page"/>	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 14** 802.1Q VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
The Number of VLAN	This is the number of VLANs configured on the switch.
Index	This is the VLAN index number.
VID	VID is the PVID, the Port VLAN ID assigned to untagged frames or priority-tagged frames received on this port that you configure in the <b>VLAN Port Setting</b> screen.
Port Number	This column displays the ports that are participating in a VLAN. A tagged port is marked as <b>T</b> , an untagged port is marked as <b>U</b> and ports not participating in a VLAN in marked as “-”.
Elapsed Time	This field shows how long it has been since a normal VLAN was registered or a static VLAN was set up.
Status	This field shows how this VLAN was added to the switch; dynamically using GVRP or statically, that is, added as a permanent entry.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking <b>Set Interval</b> .
Stop	Click <b>Stop</b> to halt polling statistics.
Previous/Next Page	Click one of these buttons to show the previous/next screen if all status information cannot be seen in one screen.

## 7.2.1 802.1Q VLAN Port Settings

To configure the 802.1Q VLAN settings on a port, click the **VLAN Port Settings** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

**Figure 32** 802.1Q VLAN Port Settings

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 15** 802.1Q VLAN Port Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
GVRP	GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to dynamically register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Select this check box to permit VLAN groups beyond the local switch.
Port Isolation	<b>Port Isolation</b> allows each port (1 to 10) to communicate with the CPU port and the shared GBIC ports (11 to 12). The isolated ports (1 to 10) cannot communicate with each other. However, the shared GBIC ports (11 to 12) and the CPU port can communicate with all ports. This option is the most limiting but also the most secure.
Port	This field displays the port numbers.
Ingress Check	If this check box is selected for a port, the device discards incoming frames for VLANs that do not include this port in its member set.
PVID	Each port on the switch is capable of passing tagged or untagged frames. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch, the switch first decides where to forward the frame, and then inserts a VLAN tag reflecting the default ingress port's VLAN ID, the PVID. The default PVID is VLAN 1 for all ports, but this can be changed to any number between 0 and 4094.
GVRP	Select this check box to permit VLANs groups beyond the local switch on this port. GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network.

**Table 15** 802.1Q VLAN Port Settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Acceptable Frame Type	Specify the type of frames allowed on a port. Choices are <b>All</b> and <b>Tag Only</b> . Select <b>All</b> to accept all frames with untagged or tagged frames on this port. This is the default setting. Select <b>Tag Only</b> to accept only tagged frames on this port. All untagged frames are dropped.
VLAN Trunking	Enable <b>VLAN Trunking</b> on ports connected to other switches or routers (but not ports directly connected to end users) to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through the switch.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the changes.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to start configuring the screen again.

## 7.2.2 802.1Q Static VLAN

You can dynamically have a port join a VLAN group using GVRP, permanently assign a port to be a member of a VLAN group or prohibit a port from joining a VLAN group in this screen. Click **Static VLAN** in the **VLAN Status** screen to display the screen as shown next.

**Figure 33** 802.1Q Static VLAN

Static VLAN VLAN Status

ACTIVE

Name

VLAN Group ID

Port	Control	Control	Control	Tagging
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
10	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
11	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
12	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

Add Cancel Clear

VID	Active	Name	Delete
1	Yes	1	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 16** 802.1Q Static VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable the VLAN.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this VLAN group for identification purposes.
VLAN Group ID	Enter the VLAN ID for this static VLAN entry; the valid range is between 1 and 4094.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
Control	Select <b>Normal</b> for the port to dynamically join this VLAN group using GVRP. This is the default selection. Select <b>Fixed</b> for the port to be a permanent member of this VLAN group. Select <b>Forbidden</b> if you want to prohibit the port from joining this VLAN group.
Tagging	Select <b>TX Tagging</b> if you want the port to tag all outgoing frames transmitted with this VLAN Group ID.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save the new rule to the switch. It then displays in the summary table at the bottom of the screen.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to clear the fields to the factory defaults.

### 7.2.3 Viewing and Editing VLAN Settings

To view a summary of the VLAN configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Static VLAN** screen.

To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **VID** field.

**Figure 34** Static VLAN: Summary Table

VID	Active	Name	Delete
1	Yes	1	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 17** Static VLAN: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group. Click the number to edit the VLAN settings.
Active	This field indicates whether the VLAN settings are enabled ( <b>Yes</b> ) or disabled ( <b>No</b> ).
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this VLAN group.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column, then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

### 7.2.3.1 VID1 Example Screen

Figure 35 VID1 Example Screen

Port	Control			Tagging
1	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
6	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
7	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
8	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
9	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
10	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
11	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
12	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

## 7.3 Introduction to Port-based VLANs

Port-based VLANs are VLANs where the packet forwarding decision is based on the destination MAC address and its associated port.

Port-based VLANs require allowed outgoing ports to be defined for each port. Therefore, if you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, for example, between conference rooms in a hotel, you must define the egress (an egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves) for both ports.

Port-based VLANs are specific only to the switch on which they were created.

The port-based VLAN setup screen is shown next. The CPU management port forms a VLAN with all Gigabit ports.

### 7.3.1 Configuring a Port-based VLAN

Select **Port Based** as the **VLAN Type** in the **Switch Setup** screen under **Basic Setting** and then click **VLAN** under **Advanced Application** to display the next screen.

**Figure 36** Port Based VLAN Setup (All Connected)

Port Based VLAN Setup

Setting Wizard: All connected [Apply]

		Incoming												
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
Outgoing	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1
	2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2
	3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	3
	4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	4
	5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	5
	6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	6
	7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	7
	8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	8
	9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	9
	10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10
	11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11
	12	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	12
CPU	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CPU	
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	

[Apply] [Cancel]

**Figure 37** Port Based VLAN Setup (Port isolation)

Port Based VLAN Setup

Setting Wizard: Port isolation [Apply]

		Incoming												
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
Outgoing	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1
	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	2
	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	3
	4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	4
	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	5
	6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	6
	7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	7
	8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	8
	9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	9
	10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	10
	11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	11
	12	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	12
CPU	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CPU	
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	

[Apply] [Cancel]

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 18** Port Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Setting Wizard	<p>Choose from <b>All connected</b> or <b>Port isolation</b>.</p> <p>All connected means all ports can communicate with each other, that is, there are no virtual LANs. All incoming and outgoing ports are selected (see <a href="#">Figure 36 on page 78</a>). This option is the most flexible but also the least secure.</p> <p>Port isolation means that each port can only communicate with the CPU management port and cannot communicate with each other. All incoming ports are selected while only the CPU outgoing port is selected (see <a href="#">Figure 37 on page 78</a>). This option is the most limiting but also the most secure.</p> <p>After you make your selection, click <b>Apply</b> (top right of screen) to display the screens as mentioned above. You can still customize these settings by adding/deleting incoming or outgoing ports, but you must also click <b>Apply</b> at the bottom of the screen.</p>
Incoming	<p>These are the ingress ports; an ingress port is an incoming port, that is, a port through which a data packet enters. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the ingress port for both ports. The numbers in the top row denote the incoming port for the corresponding port listed on the left (its outgoing port). <b>CPU</b> refers to the switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Gigabit ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the switch cannot be managed from that port.</p>
Outgoing	<p>These are the egress ports; an egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the egress port for both ports. <b>CPU</b> refers to the switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Gigabit ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the switch cannot be managed from that port.</p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the changes, including the “wizard settings”.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to start configuring the screen again.

# CHAPTER 8

## Static MAC Forward Setup

Use these screens to configure static MAC address forwarding.

### 8.1 Introduction to Static MAC Forward Setup

A static MAC address entry is an address that has been manually entered in the MAC address learning table. Static MAC addresses do not age out. When you set up static MAC address rules, you are setting static MAC addresses for a port. Devices that match static MAC address rules on a port can *only* receive traffic on that port and cannot receive traffic on other ports. This may reduce unicast flooding.

### 8.2 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding

Click **Static MAC Forwarding** to display the configuration screen as shown.

**Figure 38** Static MAC Forwarding

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 19** Static MAC Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by clearing this check box.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes for this static MAC address forwarding rule.



**Table 19** Static MAC Forwarding (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address in valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs. Static MAC addresses do not age out.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number.
Port	Select a port where the MAC address entered in the previous field will be automatically forwarded.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save the new rule to the switch. It then displays in the summary table at the bottom of the screen.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to clear the fields to the factory defaults.

## 8.3 Viewing and Editing Static MAC Forwarding Rules

To view a summary of the rule configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen.

To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

**Figure 39** Static MAC Forwarding: Summary Table

Index	Active	Name	MAC Address	VID	Port	Delete
1	Yes	test	0a:b2:a0:81:f3:73	1	1	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 20** Static MAC Forwarding: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	Click an index number to modify a static MAC address rule for a port.
Active	This field displays whether this static MAC address forwarding rule is active ( <b>Yes</b> ) or not ( <b>No</b> ). You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for identification purposes for this static MAC address-forwarding rule.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address that will be forwarded.
VID	This field displays the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
Port	This field displays the port where the MAC address shown in the next field will be forwarded.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column, then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the selected checkboxes in the <b>Delete</b> column.

# CHAPTER 9

## Filtering

This chapter discusses static IP and MAC address port filtering.

### 9.1 Introduction to Filtering

Filtering means sifting traffic going through the switch based on the source and/or destination MAC addresses and VLAN group (ID).

### 9.2 Configuring a Filtering Rule

Click **Advanced Application** and **Filtering** to display the screen as shown next.

**Figure 40 Filtering**

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

**Table 21 Filtering**

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Make sure to select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by deselecting this check box.
Name	Type a descriptive name for this filter rule. This is for identification purpose only.

**Table 21** Filtering (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Action	Select <b>Discard source</b> to drop frame from the source MAC address (specified in the <b>MAC</b> field). The switch can still send frames to the MAC address. Select <b>Discard destination</b> to drop frames to the destination MAC address (specified in the <b>MAC</b> address). The switch can still receive frames originating from the MAC address. Select <b>Discard source</b> and <b>Discard destination</b> to block traffic to/from the MAC address specified in the <b>MAC</b> field.
MAC	Type a MAC address in valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs.
VID	Type the VLAN group identification number.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save the new rule to the switch. It then displays in the summary table at the bottom of the screen.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to clear the fields to the factory defaults.

## 9.3 Viewing and Editing Filter Rules

To view a summary of the rule configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Filtering** screen.

To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

**Figure 41** Filtering: Summary Table

Index	Active	Name	MAC Address	Action	Delete
1	Yes	Example	00:a0:c5:00:07:27 / 1	Discard source	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in the summary table.

**Table 22** Filtering: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
Active	This field displays <b>Yes</b> when the rule is activated and <b>No</b> when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purpose only.
MAC Address	This field displays the source/destination MAC address with the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
Action	This field displays the filter action.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column and then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the selected checkboxes in the <b>Delete</b> column.

# CHAPTER 10

## Spanning Tree Protocol

This chapter introduces the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP).

### 10.1 Introduction to Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a switch to interact with other STP-compliant switches in your network to ensure that only one route exists between any two stations on the network.

#### 10.1.1 STP Terminology

The root bridge is the base of the spanning tree; it is the bridge with the lowest identifier value (MAC address).

Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame onto a LAN through that port. It is assigned according to the speed of the link to which a port is attached. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see the next table.

**Table 23** STP Path Costs

	LINK SPEED	RECOMMENDED VALUE	RECOMMENDED RANGE	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	4Mbps	250	100 to 1000	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Mbps	100	50 to 600	1 to 65535
Path Cost	16Mbps	62	40 to 400	1 to 65535
Path Cost	100Mbps	19	10 to 60	1 to 65535
Path Cost	1Gbps	4	3 to 10	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Gbps	2	1 to 5	1 to 65535

On each bridge, the root port is the port through which this bridge communicates with the root. It is the port on this switch with the lowest path cost to the root (the root path cost). If there is no root port, then this switch has been accepted as the root bridge of the spanning tree network.

For each LAN segment, a designated bridge is selected. This bridge has the lowest cost to the root among the bridges connected to the LAN.

## 10.1.2 How STP Works

After a bridge determines the lowest cost-spanning tree with STP, it enables the root port and the ports that are the designated ports for connected LANs, and disables all other ports that participate in STP. Network packets are therefore only forwarded between enabled ports, eliminating any possible network loops.

STP-aware switches exchange Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) periodically. When the bridged LAN topology changes, a new spanning tree is constructed.

Once a stable network topology has been established, all bridges listen for Hello BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) transmitted from the root bridge. If a bridge does not get a Hello BPDU after a predefined interval (Max Age), the bridge assumes that the link to the root bridge is down. This bridge then initiates negotiations with other bridges to reconfigure the network to re-establish a valid network topology.

## 10.1.3 STP Port States

STP assigns five port states (see next table) to eliminate packet looping. A bridge port is not allowed to go directly from blocking state to forwarding state so as to eliminate transient loops.

**Table 24** STP Port States

PORT STATE	DESCRIPTION
Disabled	STP is disabled (default).
Blocking	Only configuration and management BPDUs are received and processed.
Listening	All BPDUs are received and processed.
Learning	All BPDUs are received and processed. Information frames are submitted to the learning process but not forwarded.
Forwarding	All BPDUs are received and processed. All information frames are received and forwarded.

## 10.2 STP Status

Click **Advanced Application** and then **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the STP status as shown in the screen next.

**Figure 42** Spanning Tree Protocol: Status

Bridge	Root	Our Bridge
Bridge ID	0000-000000000000	0000-000000000000
Hello Time (second)	0	0
Max Age (second)	0	0
Forwarding Delay (second)	0	0
Cost to Bridge	0	
Port ID	0x0000	
Topology Changed Times		0
Time Since Last Change		0:00:00

Polling Interval:

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 25** Spanning Tree Protocol: Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Spanning Tree Protocol	This field displays <b>Running</b> if STP is activated. Otherwise, it displays <b>Down</b> .
Bridge	<b>Root</b> refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). <b>Our Bridge</b> is this switch. This switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for <b>Root</b> and <b>Our Bridge</b> if the switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The root bridge determines <b>Hello Time</b> , <b>Max Age</b> and <b>Forwarding Delay</b>
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding).
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the switch through which this switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.

**Table 25** Spanning Tree Protocol: Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking <b>Set Interval</b> .
Stop	Click <b>Stop</b> to halt STP statistic polling.

## 10.2.1 Configuring STP

To configure STP, click the **Configuration** link in the **Spanning Tree Protocol** screen as shown next.

**Figure 43** Spanning Tree Protocol: Configuration

Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Active

Bridge Priority

Hello Time  Seconds

Max Age  Seconds

Forwarding Delay  Seconds

Port	Active	Priority	Path Cost
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 26** Spanning Tree Protocol: Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate STP.
Bridge Priority	<p>Bridge priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. The allowed range is 0 to 61440.</p> <p>The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge.</p> <p>Bridge Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.</p>
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.
Max Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	<p>This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule:</p> <p><b>Note:</b> <math>2 * (\text{Forward Delay} - 1) \geq \text{Max Age} \geq 2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1)</math></p>
Port	This field displays the port number.
Active	Select this check box to activate STP on this port.
Priority	<p>Configure the priority for each port here.</p> <p>Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in a switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and default value is 128.</p>
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is assigned according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see <a href="#">Table 23 on page 84</a> for more information.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.



# CHAPTER 11

## Bandwidth Control

This chapter shows you how you can set the maximum bandwidth allowed for traffic flows on a port using the Bandwidth Control setup screens.

### 11.1 Introduction to Bandwidth Control

Bandwidth control means defining a maximum allowable bandwidth for incoming and/or outgoing traffic flows on a port.

#### 11.1.1 CIR and PIR

The Committed Information Rate (CIR) is the guaranteed bandwidth for the incoming traffic flow on a port. The Peak Information Rate (PIR) is the maximum bandwidth allowed for the incoming traffic flow on a port when there is no network congestion.

The CIR and PIR should be set for all ports that use the same uplink bandwidth. If the CIR is reached, packets are sent at the rate up to the PIR. When network congestion occurs, packets through the ingress port exceeding the CIR will be marked for drop.

**Note:** The CIR should be less than the PIR.

The sum of CIRs cannot be greater than or equal to the uplink bandwidth.

#### 11.1.2 Bandwidth Control Setup

Click **Advanced Application** and then **Bandwidth Control** in the navigation panel to bring up the screen as shown next.

**Figure 44** Bandwidth Control

Bandwidth Control				
Active <input type="checkbox"/>				
Port	Active	Ingress Rate		Egress Rate
		Commit Rate	Peak Rate	
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 27** Bandwidth Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate bandwidth control.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Active	Make sure to select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by deselecting this check box.
Commit Rate	Specify the guaranteed bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the incoming traffic flow on a port. The commit rate should be less than the peak rate. The sum of commit rates cannot be greater than or equal to the uplink bandwidth.
Peak Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the incoming traffic flow on a port.
Egress Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the out-going traffic flow on a port. Enter a number between 1 and 1000.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the settings.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to your previous configuration.

# CHAPTER 12

## Broadcast Storm Control

### 12.1 Introducing Broadcast Storm Control

Broadcast storm control limits the number of broadcast, multicast and destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the switch receives per second on the ports. When the maximum number of allowable broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets is reached per second, the subsequent packets are discarded. Enable this feature to reduce broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets in your network. You can specify limits for each packet type on each port.

### 12.2 Configuring Broadcast Storm Control

Click **Advanced Application, Broadcast Storm Control** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

**Figure 45** Broadcast Storm Control

Port	Broadcast (pkt/s)	Multicast (pkt/s)	DLF (pkt/s)
1	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
2	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
3	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
4	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
5	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
6	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
7	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
8	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
9	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
10	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
11	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
12	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 28** Broadcast Storm Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable broadcast storm control on the switch.
Port	This field displays a port number.
Broadcast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many broadcast packets the port receives per second.
Multicast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many multicast packets the port receives per second.
DLF (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the port receives per second.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# CHAPTER 13

## Mirroring

This chapter discusses the Mirror setup screens.

### 13.1 Introduction to Port Mirroring

Port mirroring allows you to copy traffic going from one or all ports to another or all ports in order that you can examine the traffic from the monitor port (the port you copy the traffic to) without interference.

### 13.2 Port Mirroring Configuration

Click **Advanced Application, Mirroring** in the navigation panel to display the **Mirroring** screen.

You must first select a monitor port. A monitor port is a port that copies the traffic of another port. After you select a monitor port, configure a mirroring rule in the related fields.

**Figure 46** Mirroring

Port	Mirrored	Direction
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

**Table 29** Mirroring

<b>LABEL</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
Active	Clear this check box to deactivate port mirroring on the switch.
Monitor Port	The monitor port is the port you copy the traffic to in order to examine it in more detail without interfering with the traffic flow on the original port(s). Select this port from this drop-down list box.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Mirrored	Select this option to mirror the traffic on a port.
Direction	Specify the direction of the traffic to mirror. Choices are <b>Egress</b> (outgoing), <b>Ingress</b> (incoming) and <b>Both</b> .
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the settings.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields.

# CHAPTER 14

## Link Aggregation

This chapter shows you how to logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.

### 14.1 Introduction to Link Aggregation

Link aggregation (trunking) is the grouping of physical ports into one logical higher-capacity link. You may want to trunk ports if for example, it is cheaper to use multiple lower-speed links than to under-utilize a high-speed, but more costly, single-port link. Link aggregation also allows port redundancy, that is, if a port fails, the traffic automatically goes through another trunk group member port.

However, the more ports you aggregate then the fewer available ports you have. A link aggregation group is one logical link containing multiple ports.

#### 14.1.1 Dynamic Link Aggregation

The switch adheres to the 802.3ad standard for static and dynamic (LACP) port trunking.

The switch supports the link aggregation IEEE802.3ad standard. This standard describes the Link Aggregate Control Protocol (LACP), which is a protocol that dynamically creates and manages trunk groups.

When you enable LACP link aggregation on a port, the port can automatically negotiate with the ports at the remote end of a link to establish trunk groups.

Please note that:

- You must connect all ports point-to-point to the same Ethernet switch and configure the ports for LACP trunking.
- LACP only works on full-duplex links.
- All ports in the same trunk group must have the same media type, speed, duplex mode and flow control settings.

Configure trunk groups or LACP before you connect the Ethernet switch to avoid causing network topology loops.

## 14.1.2 Link Aggregation ID

LACP aggregation ID consists of the following information:

**Table 30** Link Aggregation ID: Local Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

**Table 31** Link Aggregation ID: Peer Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

## 14.2 Link Aggregation Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application**, **Link Aggregation** in the navigation panel to display the **Link Aggregation Protocol Status** screen.

**Figure 47** Link Aggregation: Link Aggregation Protocol Status

Index	Aggregator ID	Enabled Ports	Synchronized Ports
1	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	-	-
2	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	-	-
3	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	-	-
4	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	-	-
5	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	-	-
6	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	-	-

Polling Interval(s)



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 32** Link Aggregation: Link Aggregation Protocol Status

<b>LABEL</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
Index	This field displays the trunk ID to identify a trunk group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
Aggregator ID	Refer to <a href="#">Section 14.1.2 on page 96</a> for more information on this field.
Enabled Port	These are the ports you have configured in the <b>Link Aggregation</b> screen to be in the trunk group.
Synchronized Ports	These are the ports that are currently transmitting data as one logical link in this trunk group.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking <b>Set Interval</b> .
Stop	Click <b>Stop</b> to halt statistic polling.

## 14.3 Link Aggregation Setup

Click **Configuration** in the **Link Aggregation Protocol Status** screen to display the screen shown next.

You can configure up to six link aggregation groups and each group can aggregate up to six ports.

**Figure 48** Link Aggregation: Configuration

**Link Aggregation** Status

**Link Aggregation Control Protocol**

Active

System Priority

Group ID	Active	Dynamic(LACP)
T1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
T2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
T3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
T4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
T5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
T6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Port	Group	LACP Timeout
1	None	30 seconds
2	None	30 seconds
3	None	30 seconds
4	None	30 seconds
5	None	30 seconds
6	None	30 seconds
7	None	30 seconds
8	None	30 seconds
9	None	30 seconds
10	None	30 seconds
11	None	30 seconds
12	None	30 seconds

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 33** Link Aggregation: Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Aggregation Control Protocol	
Active	Select this checkbox to enable Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).
System Priority	LACP system priority is a number between 1 and 65, 535. The switch with the lowest system priority (and lowest port number if system priority is the same) becomes the LACP “server”. The LACP “server” controls the operation of LACP setup. Enter a number to set the priority of an active port using Link Aggregate Control Protocol (LACP). The smaller the number, the higher the priority level.
Group ID	The field identifies the link aggregation group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports
Active	Select this option to activate a trunk group.
Dynamic (LACP)	Select this check box to enable LACP for a trunk.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Group	Select the trunk group to which a port belongs.

**Table 33** Link Aggregation: Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LACP Timeout	Timeout is the time interval between the individual port exchanges of LACP packets in order to check that the peer port in the trunk group is still up. If a port does not respond after three tries, then it is deemed to be “down” and is removed from the trunk. Set a short timeout (one second) for busy trunked links to ensure that disabled ports are removed from the trunk group as soon as possible. Select either 1 second or 30 seconds.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# CHAPTER 15

## Port Authentication

This chapter describes the 802.1x authentication method and RADIUS server connection setup.

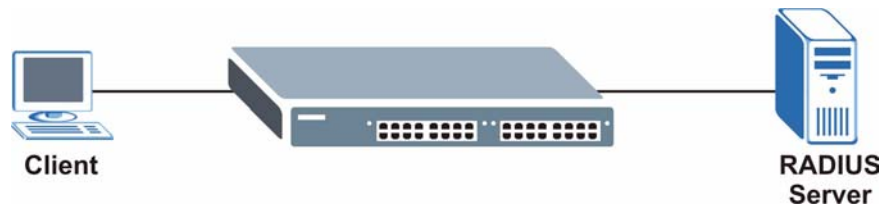
### 15.1 Introduction to Authentication

IEEE 802.1x is an extended authentication protocol<sup>1</sup> that allows support of RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) for centralized user profile management on a network RADIUS server.

#### 15.1.1 RADIUS

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) authentication is a popular protocol used to authenticate users by means of an external server instead of (or in addition to) an internal device user database that is limited to the memory capacity of the device. In essence, RADIUS authentication allows you to validate an unlimited number of users from a central location.

**Figure 49** RADIUS Server



### 15.2 Configuring Port Authentication

To enable port authentication, first activate IEEE802.1x security (both on the switch and the port(s)) then configure the RADIUS server settings.

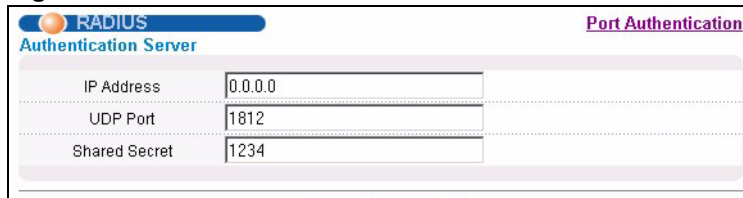
Click **Port Authentication** under **Advanced Application** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

- 
1. At the time of writing, Windows XP of the Microsoft operating systems supports 802.1x. See the Microsoft web site for information on other Windows operating system support. For other operating systems, see its documentation. If your operating system does not support 802.1x, then you may need to install 802.1x client software.

**Figure 50** Port Authentication

## 15.2.1 Configuring RADIUS Server Settings

From the **Port Authentication** screen, click **RADIUS** to display the configuration screen as shown.

**Figure 51** Port Authentication: RADIUS

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 34** Port Authentication: RADIUS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication Server	
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the external RADIUS server in dotted decimal notation.
UDP Port	The default port of the RADIUS server for authentication is <b>1812</b> . You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 31 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS server and the switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external RADIUS server and the switch.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 15.2.2 Configuring IEEE802.1x

From the **Port Authentication** screen, click **802.1x** to display the configuration screen as shown.

**Figure 52** Port Authentication: 802.1x

Port	Active	Reauthentication	Reauthentication Timer
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 35** Port Authentication: 802.1x

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to permit 802.1x authentication on the switch.  <b>Note:</b> You must first allow 802.1x authentication on the switch before configuring it on each port.
Port	This field displays a port number.
Active	Select this checkbox to permit 802.1x authentication on this port. You must first allow 802.1x authentication on the switch before configuring it on each port.
Reauthentication	Specify if a subscriber has to periodically re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Reauthentication Timer	Specify how often a client has to re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# CHAPTER 16

## Port Security

This chapter shows you how to set up port security.

### 16.1 About Port Security

Port security allows only packets with dynamically learned MAC addresses and/or configured static MAC addresses to pass through a port on the switch. The switch can learn up to 16K MAC addresses in total with no limit on individual ports other than the sum cannot exceed 16K.

For maximum port security, enable this feature, disable MAC address learning and configure static MAC address(es) for a port. It is not recommended you disable **Port Security** together with MAC address learning as this will result in many broadcasts.

### 16.2 Port Security Setup

Click **Advanced Application, Port Security** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 53** Port Security

Port	Active	Address Learning	Limited Number of Learned MAC Address
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 36** Port Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable the port security feature on the switch.
Port	This field displays a port number.
Active	Select this check box to enable port security on this port.
Address Learning	MAC address learning reduces outgoing broadcast traffic. For MAC address learning to occur on a port, the port itself must be active with address learning enabled.
Limited Number of Learned MAC Address	Use this field to limit the number of (dynamic) MAC addresses that may be learned on a port. For example, if you set this field to "5" on port 2, then only the devices with these five learned MAC addresses may access port 2 at any one time. A sixth device would have to wait until one of the five learned MAC addresses aged out. MAC-address aging out time can be set in the <b>Switch Setup</b> screen. The valid range is from 0 to 16K. 0 means this feature is disabled, so the switch will learn MAC addresses up to the global limit of 16K.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.



# CHAPTER 17

## Access Control

This chapter describes how to control access to the switch.

### 17.1 About Access Control

Click **Advanced Application, Access Control** from the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. From this screen you can configure SNMP, up to four web configurator administrators, enable/disable remote service access and configure trusted computers for remote access.

**Figure 54** Access Control



### 17.2 Access Control Overview

The following table describes how many concurrent management sessions are permitted when the multiple login feature is either enabled or disabled.

**Table 37** Access Control Overview

Multiple Login	Console port	SSH	Telnet	FTP	Web	SNMP
Enabled	One console port session	SSH and Telnet share four sessions.		One session	Up to five accounts	No limit
Disabled	The console port, SSH and Telnet share one session. The console port has the highest priority and Telnet has the lowest priority.			One session	Up to five accounts	No limit

With the multiple login feature disabled, a console port access control session and Telnet access control session cannot coexist. The console port has higher priority. If you telnet to the switch and someone is already logged in from the console port, then you will see the following message.

**Figure 55 Console Port Priority**

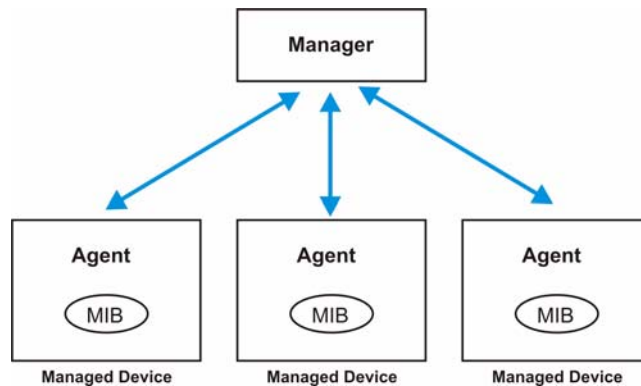
```

"Local administrator is configuring this device now!!!
Connection to host lost."

```

## 17.3 About SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network switches. SNMP is a member of TCP/IP protocol suite. A manager station can manage and monitor the switch through the network via SNMP version one (SNMPv1) and/or SNMP version 2c. The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation. SNMP is only available if TCP/IP is configured.

**Figure 56** SNMP Management Model

An SNMP managed network consists of two main components: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed switch (the GS). An agent translates the local management information from the managed switch into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a switch. Examples of variables include such as number of packets received, node port status etc. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

**Table 38** SNMP Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Get	Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
GetNext	Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
Set	Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.
Trap	Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

### 17.3.1 Supported MIBs

MIBs let administrators collect statistics and monitor status and performance.

The switch supports the following MIBs:

- SNMP MIB II (RFC 1213)
- RFC 1157 SNMP v1
- RFC 1493 Bridge MIBs
- RFC 1643 Ethernet MIBs
- RFC 1155 SMI
- SNMPv2, SNMPv2c
- RFC 2863 if-mib
- Bridge extension MIBs RFC 2674
- RFC 2925 Ping and trace route

### 17.3.2 SNMP Traps

The switch sends traps to an SNMP manager when an event occurs. SNMP traps supported are outlined in the following table.

**Table 39** SNMP Traps

OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
SNMPv2 Traps		
Cold Start	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	This trap is sent when the ES-3124 is turned on.
WarmStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2	This trap is sent when the ES-3124 restarts.
linkDown	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
linkUp	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.

**Table 39** SNMP Traps (continued)

OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
authenticationFailure	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	This trap is sent when an SNMP request comes from non-authenticated hosts.
RFC 1493 Traps		
newRoot	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.1	This trap is sent when the STP root switch changes.
topology change	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.2	This trap is sent when the STP topology changes.

### 17.3.3 Configuring SNMP

From the **Access Control** screen, display the **SNMP** screen. You can click **Access Control** to go back to the **Access Control** screen.

**Figure 57** Access Control: SNMP

The screenshot shows the 'SNMP' configuration screen within the 'Access Control' interface. It features the following fields and controls:

- Get Community:** Text input field containing 'public'.
- Set Community:** Text input field containing 'public'.
- Trap Community:** Text input field containing 'public'.
- Trap Destination:** Four stacked text input fields, each containing '0.0.0.0'.
- Buttons:** 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom center.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 40** Access Control: SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Get Community	Enter the get community, which is the password for the incoming Get- and GetNext-requests from the management station.
Set Community	Enter the set community, which is the password for incoming Set- requests from the management station.
Trap Community	Enter the trap community, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager.
Trap Destination	Enter the IP addresses of up to four stations to send your SNMP traps to.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 17.3.4 Setting Up Login Accounts

Up to five people (one administrator and four non-administrators) may access the switch via web configurator at any one time.

- 1 An administrator is someone who can both view and configure switch changes. The username for the Administrator is always **admin**. The default administrator password is **1234**.

**Note:** It is highly recommended that you change the default administrator password ("1234").

- 2 A non-administrator (username is something other than **admin**) is someone who can view but not configure switch changes.

Click **Access Control** from the navigation panel and then click **Logins** from this screen.

**Figure 58** Access Control: Logins

The screenshot shows the 'Logins' configuration interface. At the top, there's a 'Logins' header and an 'Access Control' link. Below that, the 'Administrator' section contains three password input fields: 'Old Password', 'New Password', and 'Retype to confirm'. A red warning message is displayed below these fields. The 'Edit Logins' section features a table with four columns: 'Login', 'User Name', 'Password', and 'Retype to confirm'. The table has four rows, each with a 'Login' number (1-4) and empty input fields for the other three columns. At the bottom of the form are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 41** Access Control: Logins

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Administrator	This is the default administrator account with the "admin" user name. You cannot change the default administrator user name. Only the administrator has read/write access.
Old Password	Type the existing system password ("1234" is the default password when shipped).
New Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation
Edit Logins	You may configure passwords for up to four users. These people have read-only access.
User Name	Set a user name (up to 32 characters long).
Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 17.4 SSH Overview

Unlike Telnet or FTP, which transmit data in clear text, SSH (Secure Shell) is a secure communication protocol that combines authentication and data encryption to provide secure encrypted communication between two hosts over an unsecured network.

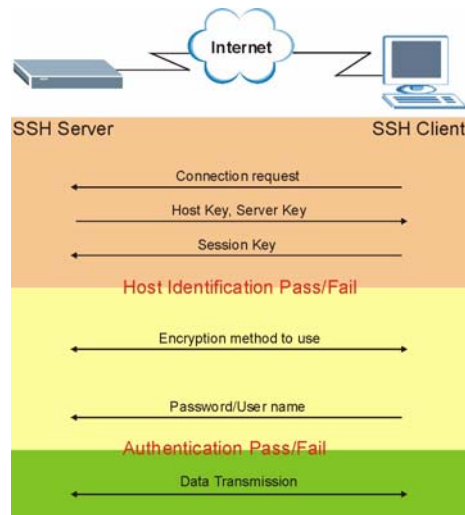
**Figure 59** SSH Communication Example



## 17.5 How SSH works

The following table summarizes how a secure connection is established between two remote hosts.

**Figure 60** How SSH Works



### 1 Host Identification

The SSH client sends a connection request to the SSH server. The server identifies itself with a host key. The client encrypts a randomly generated session key with the host key and server key and sends the result back to the server.

The client automatically saves any new server public keys. In subsequent connections, the server public key is checked against the saved version on the client computer.

### 2 Encryption Method

Once the identification is verified, both the client and server must agree on the type of encryption method to use.

### 3 Authentication and Data Transmission

After the identification is verified and data encryption activated, a secure tunnel is established between the client and the server. The client then sends its authentication information (user name and password) to the server to log in to the server.

## 17.6 SSH Implementation

Your switch supports SSH versions 1 and 2 using RSA and DSA authentication and five encryption methods (AES, 3DES, RC4, Blowfish and CAST). The SSH server is implemented on the switch for remote SMT management and file transfer on port 22 (by default). Up to four SSH connections are allowed at a time.

### 17.6.1 Requirements for Using SSH

You must install an SSH client program on a client computer (Windows or Linux operating system) that is used to connect to the switch over SSH.

## 17.7 Introduction to HTTPS

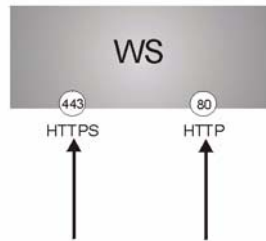
HTTPS (HyperText Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer, or HTTP over SSL) is a web protocol that encrypts and decrypts web pages. Secure Socket Layer (SSL) is an application-level protocol that enables secure transactions of data by ensuring confidentiality (an unauthorized party cannot read the transferred data), authentication (one party can identify the other party) and data integrity (you know if data has been changed).

It relies upon certificates, public keys, and private keys.

HTTPS on the switch is used so that you may securely access the switch using the web configurator. The SSL protocol specifies that the SSL server must always authenticate itself to the SSL client (the computer which requests the HTTPS connection with the switch), whereas the SSL client only should authenticate itself when the SSL server requires it to do so.

Please refer to the following figure.

- 1 HTTPS connection requests from an SSL-aware web browser go to port 443 (by default) on the switch's WS (web server).
- 2 HTTP connection requests from a web browser go to port 80 (by default) on the switch's WS.

**Figure 61** HTTPS Implementation

**Note:** If you disable HTTP in the Service Access Control screen, then the switch blocks all HTTP connection attempts.

### 17.7.1 HTTPS Example

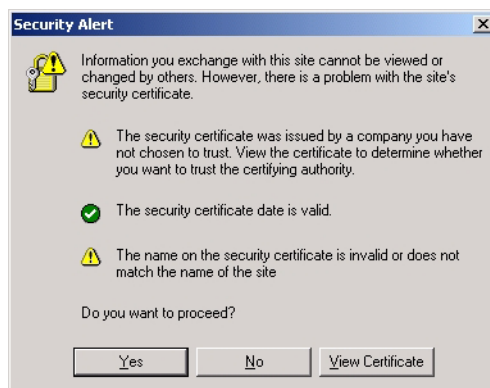
If you haven't changed the default HTTPS port on the switch, then in your browser enter "https:// switch IP Address/" as the web site address where "switch IP Address" is the IP address or domain name of the switch you wish to access.

The HTTPS proxy server listens on port 443 by default. If you change the HTTPS proxy server port to a different number on the switch, for example 8443, then you must notify people who need to access the switch web configurator to use "https:// switch IP Address:8443" as the URL.

### 17.7.2 Internet Explorer Warning Messages

When you attempt to access the switch HTTPS server, a Windows dialog box pops up asking if you trust the server certificate. Click **View Certificate** if you want to verify that the certificate is from the switch.

You see the following **Security Alert** screen in Internet Explorer. Select **Yes** to proceed to the web configurator login screen; if you select **No**, then web configurator access is blocked.

**Figure 62** Security Alert Dialog Box (Internet Explorer)



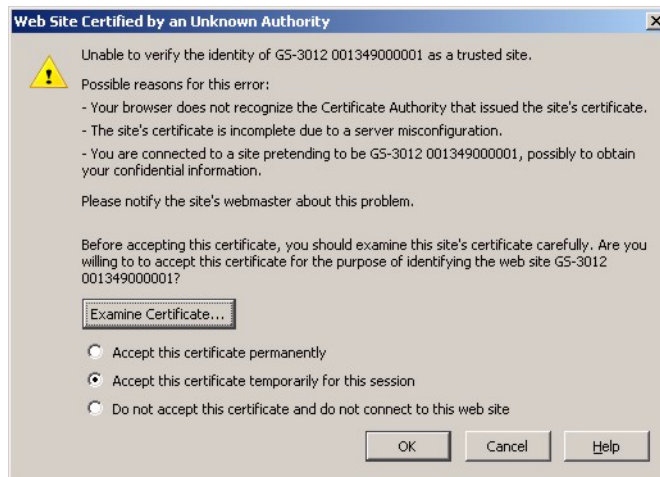
### 17.7.3 Netscape Navigator Warning Messages

When you attempt to access the switch HTTPS server, a **Website Certified by an Unknown Authority** screen pops up asking if you trust the server certificate. Click **Examine Certificate** if you want to verify that the certificate is from the switch.

If **Accept this certificate temporarily for this session** is selected, then click **OK** to continue in Netscape.

Select **Accept this certificate permanently** to import the switch's certificate into the SSL client.

**Figure 63** Security Certificate 1 (Netscape)



**Figure 64** Security Certificate 2 (Netscape)



### 17.7.4 Login Screen

After you accept the certificate and login in, the switch main screen appears. The lock displayed in the bottom of the browser status bar denotes a secure connection.

Figure 65 Main Screen (Internet Explorer)

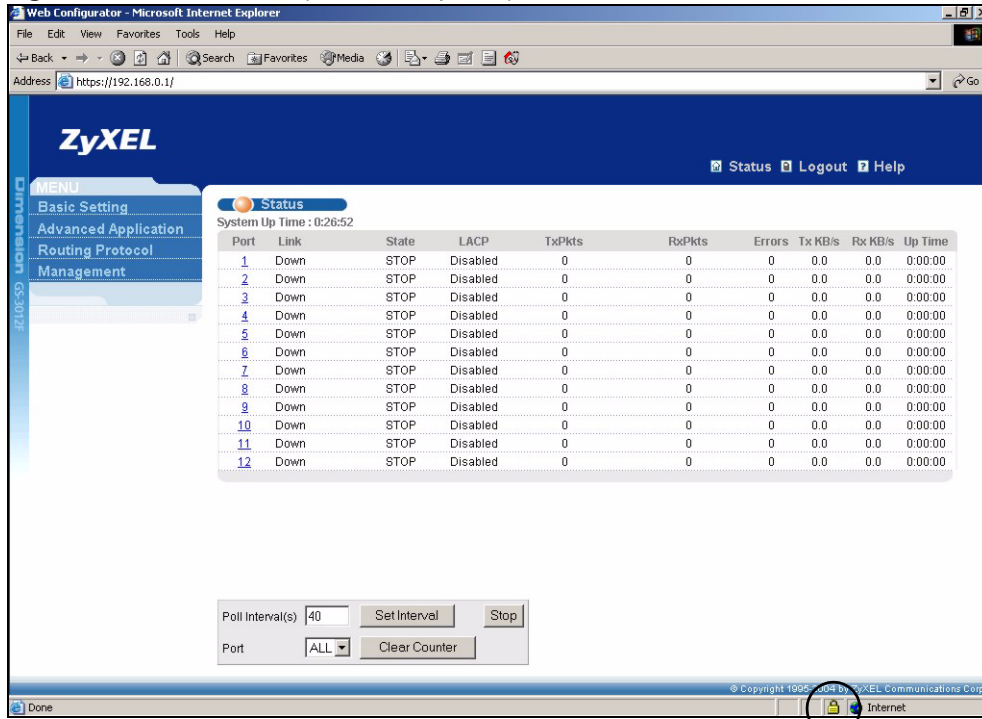
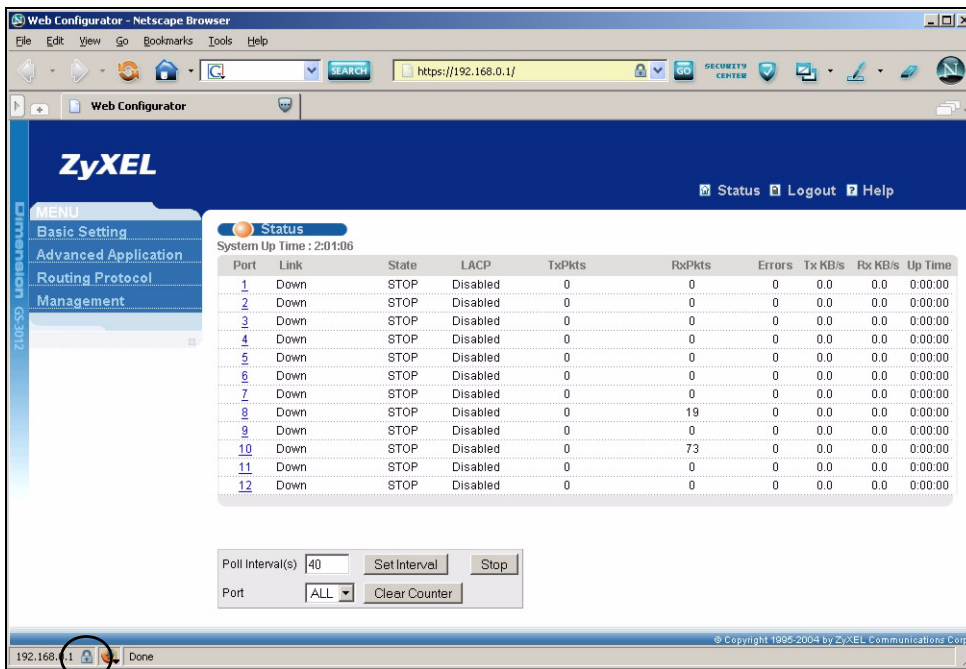


Figure 66 Main Screen (Netscape)



## 17.8 Service Access Control

Service Access Control allows you to decide what services you may use to access the switch. You may also change the default service port and configure “trusted computer(s)” for each service in the **Remote Management** screen (discussed later). Click **Access Control** to go back to the **Access Control** screen.

**Figure 67** Access Control: Service Access Control

Services	Active	Service Port	Timeout
Telnet	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	23	
SSH	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	22	
FTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	21	
HTTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	80	3 Minutes
HTTPS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	443	
ICMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
SNMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 42** Access Control: Service Access Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Services	Services you may use to access the switch are listed here.
Active	Select this option for the corresponding services that you want to allow to access the switch.
Service Port	For Telnet, SSH, FTP, HTTP or HTTPS services, you may change the default service port by typing the new port number in the <b>Service Port</b> field. If you change the default port number then you will have to let people (who wish to use the service) know the new port number for that service.
Timeout	Type how many minutes a management session (via the web configurator) can be left idle before the session times out. After it times out you have to log in with your password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks. A value greater than "0" must be entered.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 17.9 Remote Management

From the **Access Control** screen, display the **Remote Management** screen as shown next.

You can specify a group of one or more “trusted computers” from which an administrator may use a service to manage the switch. Click **Access Control** to return to the **Access Control** screen.

**Figure 68** Access Control: Remote Management

Entry	Active	Start Address	End Address	Telnet	FTP	HTTP	ICMP	SNMP	SSH	HTTPS
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 43** Access Control: Remote Management

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Entry	This is the client set index number. A “trusted computers” from which an administrator may use a service to manage the switch.
Active	Select this check box to activate this secured client set. Clear the check box if you wish to temporarily disable the set without deleting it.
Start Address End Address	Configure the IP address range of trusted computers from which you can manage this switch. The switch checks if the client IP address of a computer requesting a service or protocol matches the range set here. The switch immediately disconnects the session if it does not match.
Telnet/FTP/HTTP/ ICMP /SNMP/SSH/ HTTPS	Select services that may be used for managing the switch from the specified trusted computers.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# CHAPTER 18

## Queuing Method

This chapter introduces SPQ and WFQ.

### 18.1 Introduction to Queuing

Queuing is used to help solve performance degradation when there is network congestion. Use the Queuing Method screen to configure queuing algorithms for outgoing traffic. See also Priority Queue Assignment in Switch Setup and 802.1p Priority in Port Setup for related information.

Queuing algorithms allow switches to maintain separate queues for packets from each individual source or flow and prevent a source from monopolizing the bandwidth.

The switch has eight physical queues, Q0 to Q7. Q7 has the highest priority and Q0 has the lowest.

**Table 44** Physical Queue Priority

QUEUE	PRIORITY
Q7	8 (highest)
Q6	7
Q5	6
Q4	5
Q3	4
Q2	3
Q1	2
Q0	1 (lowest)

#### 18.1.1 Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ)

Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ) services queues based on priority only. As traffic comes into the switch, traffic on the highest priority queue, Q7 is transmitted first. When that queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue, Q6 is transmitted until Q6 empties, and then traffic is transmitted on Q5 and so on. If higher priority queues never empty, then traffic on lower priority queues never gets sent. SPQ does not automatically adapt to changing network requirements.

## 18.1.2 Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR)

Round Robin Scheduling services queues on a rotating basis and is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. A queue is given an amount of bandwidth irrespective of the incoming traffic on that port. This queue then moves to the back of the list. The next queue is given an equal amount of bandwidth, and then moves to the end of the list; and so on, depending on the number of queues being used. This works in a looping fashion until a queue is empty.

Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) uses the same algorithm as round robin scheduling, but services queues based on their priority and queue weight (the number you configure in the **Weight** field – see [Figure 69 on page 118](#)) rather than a fixed amount of bandwidth. WRR is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights. This queuing mechanism is highly efficient in that it divides any available bandwidth across the different traffic queues and returns to queues that have not yet emptied.

## 18.2 Configuring Queuing

Click **Queuing Method** under **Advanced Application** in the navigation panel.

**Figure 69** Queuing Method

Port	Method	Weight							
		Q0	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q5	Q6	Q7
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
10	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
11	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
12	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 45** Queuing Method

<b>LABEL</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
Port	This label shows the port you are configuring.
Method	Select <b>SPQ</b> (Strict Priority Queuing) or <b>WRR</b> (Weighted Round Robin Scheduling). Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ) services queues based on priority only. When the highest priority queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue begins. Q7 has the highest priority and Q0 the lowest. WRR services queues on a rotating basis based on their queue weight (the number you configure in the queue <b>Weight</b> field). Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights.
Weight	When you select <b>WRR</b> , enter the queue weight here. Bandwidth is divided across the different traffic queues according to their weights. Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# CHAPTER 19

## Classifier

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the packet classifier on the switch.

### 19.1 About the Classifier and QoS

Quality of Service (QoS) refers to both a network's ability to deliver data with minimum delay, and the networking methods used to control the use of bandwidth. Without QoS, all traffic data is equally likely to be dropped when the network is congested. This can cause a reduction in network performance and make the network inadequate for time-critical application such as video-on-demand.

A classifier groups traffic into data flows according to specific criteria such as the source address, destination address, source port number, destination port number or incoming port number. For example, you can configure a classifier to select traffic from the same protocol port (such as Telnet) to form a flow.

Configure QoS on the switch to group and prioritize application traffic and fine-tune network performance. Setting up QoS involves two separate steps:

- 1 Configure classifiers to sort traffic into different flows.
- 2 Configure policy rules to define actions to be performed for a classified traffic flow (refer to to configure policy rules).

### 19.2 Configuring the Classifier

Use the **Classifier** screen to define the classifiers. After you define the classifier, you can specify actions (or policy) to act upon the traffic that matches the rules. To configure policy rules, refer to .

Click **Advanced Application** and **Classifier** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown.



Figure 70 Classifier

The screenshot shows the 'Classifier' configuration window. It is organized into several sections:

- Active:** A checked checkbox.
- Name:** A text field containing 'Example'.
- Packet Format:** A dropdown menu set to 'All'.
- Layer 2:**
  - VLAN:** Radio buttons for 'Any' (selected) and a text field.
  - Priority:** Radio buttons for 'Any' (selected) and a dropdown menu.
  - Ethernet Type:** Radio buttons for 'IP' (selected) and 'Others' with a '(Hex)' text field.
- Layer 3:**
  - Source:** Radio buttons for 'MAC' (selected) and 'Address'. The 'MAC' field contains '00 : 50 : ba : ad : 4f : 81'. Below it is a 'Port' dropdown set to 'Port 2'.
  - Destination:** Radio buttons for 'MAC' (selected) and 'Address'. The 'MAC' field contains six greyed-out boxes.
- DSCP:** Radio buttons for 'Any' (selected) and a text field.
- IP Protocol:** Radio buttons for 'All' (selected) and 'Others' with a '(Dec)' text field. There is also an 'Establish Only' checkbox.
- Source (IP):** Radio buttons for 'Address / Address' (selected) and 'Prefix'. The 'Address / Address' field contains '0.0.0.0 / '.
- Destination (IP):** Radio buttons for 'Address / Address' (selected) and 'Prefix'. The 'Address / Address' field contains '0.0.0.0 / '.
- Socket Number:** Radio buttons for 'Any' (selected) and a text field.

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 46 Classifier

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable this rule.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this rule for identifying purposes.
Packet Format	Specify the format of the packet. Choices are <b>All</b> , <b>802.3 tagged</b> , <b>802.3 untagged</b> , <b>Ethernet II tagged</b> and <b>Ethernet II untagged</b> . A value of <b>802.3</b> indicates that the packets are formatted according to the IEEE 802.3 standards. A value of <b>Ethernet II</b> indicates that the packets are formatted according to RFC 894, Ethernet II encapsulation.
Layer 2	Specify the fields below to configure a layer 2 classifier.
VLAN	Select <b>Any</b> to classify traffic from any VLAN or select the second option and specify the source VLAN ID in the field provided.
Priority	Select <b>Any</b> to classify traffic from any priority level or select the second option and specify a priority level in the field provided.

**Table 46** Classifier (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Ethernet Type	Select an Ethernet type or select <b>Others</b> and enter the Ethernet type number in hexadecimal value. Refer to <a href="#">Table 48 on page 123</a> for information.
Source	
MAC Address	Select <b>Any</b> to apply the rule to all MAC addresses. To specify a source, select the second choice and type a MAC address in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs).
Port	Select the port to which the rule should be applied. You may choose one port only or all ports ( <b>All Ports</b> ).
Destination	
MAC Address	Select <b>Any</b> to apply the rule to all MAC addresses. To specify a destination, select the second choice and type a MAC address in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs).
Layer 3 Specify the fields below to configure a layer 3 classifier.	
DSCP	Select <b>Any</b> to classify traffic from any DSCP or select the second option and specify a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number between 0 and 63 in the field provided.
IP Protocol	Select an IP protocol type or select <b>Others</b> and enter the protocol number in decimal value. Refer to <a href="#">Table 49 on page 124</a> for more information. You may select <b>Establish Only</b> for <b>TCP</b> protocol type. This means that the switch will pick out the packets that are sent to establish TCP connections.
Source	
IP Address/ Address Prefix	Enter a source IP address in dotted decimal notation. Specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask.
Socket Number	<b>Note: You MUST select either UDP or TCP in the IP Protocol field before you configure the socket numbers.</b>  Select <b>Any</b> to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers or select the second option and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number.
Destination	
IP Address/ Address Prefix	Enter a destination IP address in dotted decimal notation. Specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask.
Socket Number	<b>Note: You MUST select either UDP or TCP in the IP Protocol field before you configure the socket numbers.</b>  Select <b>Any</b> to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers or select the second option and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to insert the entry in the summary table below.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields back to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

## 19.3 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Classifier** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

**Note:** When two rules conflict with each other, a higher layer rule has priority over lower layer rule.

**Figure 71** Classifier: Summary Table

Index	Active	Name	Rule	Delete
1	Yes	Example	EtherType = IP; SrcMac = 00:50:ba:ad:4f:81; SrcPort = port 2;	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 47** Classifier: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
Active	This field displays <b>Yes</b> when the rule is activated and <b>No</b> when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purpose only.
Rule	This field displays a summary of the classifier rule's settings.
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

The following table shows some other common Ethernet types and the corresponding protocol number.

**Table 48** Common Ethernet Types and Protocol Number

ETHERNET TYPE	PROTOCOL NUMBER
IP ETHII	0800
X.75 Internet	0801
NBS Internet	0802
ECMA Internet	0803
Chaosnet	0804
X.25 Level 3	0805
XNS Compat	0807
Banyan Systems	0BAD
BBN Simnet	5208
IBM SNA	80D5
AppleTalk AARP	80F3

Some of the most common IP ports are:

**Table 49** Common IP Ports

PORT NUMBER	PORT NAME
21	FTP
23	Telnet
25	SMTP
53	DNS
80	HTTP
110	POP3

## 19.4 Classifier Example

The following figure shows an example where you configure a classifier that identifies all traffic from MAC address 00:50:ba:ad:4f:81 on port 2.

**Figure 72** Classifier: Example

The screenshot shows the 'Classifier' configuration window. The 'Active' checkbox is checked. The 'Name' field is 'Example'. The 'Packet Format' is set to 'All'. Under 'Layer 2', 'VLAN' is 'Any', 'Priority' is '0', and 'Ethernet Type' is 'IP'. The 'Source' section is configured with 'MAC Address' set to 'MAC' and the value '00:50:ba:ad:4f:81', and 'Port' set to 'Port 2'. The 'Destination' section is set to 'MAC Address' with 'Any'. Under 'Layer 3', 'DSCP' is 'Any', 'IP Protocol' is 'All', and both 'Source' and 'Destination' are set to 'IP Address / Prefix' with the value '0.0.0.0'. At the bottom, there are 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear' buttons.

# CHAPTER 20

## Policy Rule

This chapter shows you how to configure policy rules.

### 20.1 About Policy Rules

A classifier distinguishes traffic into flows based on the configured criteria (refer to for more information). A policy rule ensures that a traffic flow gets the requested treatment in the network.

#### 20.1.1 DiffServ

DiffServ (Differentiated Services) is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

#### 20.1.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different kinds of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

### 20.2 Configuring Policy Rules

**Note:** You must first configure a classifier in the Classifier screen. Refer to for more information.

Click **Advanced Applications** and then **Policy Rule** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 73** Policy

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 50** Policy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable the policy.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes.

**Table 50** Policy (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Classifier(s)	This field displays the active classifier(s) you configure in the <b>Classifier</b> screen (refer to ). Select the classifier(s) to which this policy rule applies. To select more than one classifier, press [SHIFT] and select the choices at the same time.
<b>Parameters</b> Set the fields below for this policy. You only have to set the field(s) that is related to the action(s) you configure in the <b>Action</b> field.	
<b>General</b>	
VLAN ID	Specify a VLAN ID number.
Egress Port	Select an outgoing port.
Outgoing packet format for Egress Port	Select <b>Tag</b> to add the specified VID to packets on the specified outgoing port. Otherwise, select <b>Untag</b> .
Priority	Specify a priority level.
DSCP	Specify a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number between 0 and 63.
TOS	Specify the type of service (TOS) priority level.
Metering	You can configure the desired bandwidth available to a traffic flow. Traffic that exceeds the maximum bandwidth allocated (in cases where the network is congested) is called out-of-profile traffic.
Bandwidth	Specify the bandwidth in kilobits per second (Kbps). Enter a number between 1 and 1000000.
Out of Profile DSCP	Specify a new DSCP number (between 0 and 63) if you want to replace or remark the DSCP number for out-of-profile traffic.
<b>Action</b> Specify the action(s) the switch takes on the associated classified traffic flow.	
Forwarding	Select <b>No change</b> to forward the packets. Select <b>Discard packet</b> to drop the packets. Select <b>Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping</b> to retain the frames that were marked to be dropped before.
Priority	Select <b>No change</b> to keep the priority setting of the frames. Select <b>Set the packet's 802.1 priority</b> to replace the 802.1 priority field with the value you set in the <b>Priority</b> field. Select <b>Send the packet to priority queue</b> to put the packets in the designated queue. Select <b>Replace the 802.1 priority field with IP TOS value</b> to replace the 802.1 priority field with the value you set in the <b>TOS</b> field.
DiffServ	Select <b>No change</b> to keep the TOS and/or DSCP fields in the packets. Select <b>Set the packet's TOS field</b> to set the TOS field with the value you configure in the <b>TOS</b> field. Select <b>Replace the IP TOS with the 802.1 priority value</b> to replace the TOS field with the value you configure in the <b>Priority</b> field. Select <b>Set the Diffserv Codepoint field in the frame</b> to set the DSCP field with the value you configure in the <b>DSCP</b> field.

**Table 50** Policy (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Outgoing	Select <b>Send the packet to the mirror port</b> to send the packet to the mirror port. Select <b>Send the packet to the egress port</b> to send the packet to the egress port. Select <b>Send the matching frames (broadcast or DLF, multicast, marked for dropping or to be sent to the CPU) to the egress port</b> to send the broadcast, multicast, DLF, marked-to-drop or CPU frames to the egress port. Select <b>Set the packet's VLANID</b> to set the VLAN ID of the packet with the value you configure in the <b>VLANID</b> field.
Metering	Select <b>Enable</b> to activate bandwidth limitation on the traffic flow(s) then set the actions to be taken on out-of-profile packets.
Out-of-profile action	Select the action(s) to be performed for out-of-profile traffic. Select <b>Drop the packet</b> to discard the out-of-profile traffic. Select <b>Change the DSCP Value</b> to replace the DSCP field with the value specified in the <b>Out of profile DSCP</b> field. <b>Set Out-Drop Precedence</b> is related to the metering bandwidth setting. The switch marks traffic that is higher than the metering bandwidth setting as drop precedence. Select <b>Set Out-Drop Precedence</b> to drop packets that are marked drop-precedence first when there is traffic congestion. Select <b>Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping</b> to queue the frames that are marked to be dropped.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to inset the entry to the summary table below.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields back to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

## 20.3 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Policy** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

**Figure 74** Policy: Summary Table

Index	Active	Name	Classifier(s)	Delete
1	Yes	Test	Example;	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 51** Policy: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the policy index number. Click an index number to edit the policy.
Active	This field displays <b>Yes</b> when policy is activated and <b>No</b> when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this policy. This is for identification purposes only.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the name(s) of the classifier to which this policy applies.



**Table 51** Policy: Summary Table (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

## 20.4 Policy Example

The figure below shows an example **Policy** screen where you configure a policy to limit bandwidth and discard out-of-band traffic on a traffic flow classified using the **Example** classifier (refer to [Section 19.4 on page 124](#)).

**Figure 75** Policy Example

Policy																													
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																												
Name	Test																												
Classifier(s)	Example																												
Parameters	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>VLAN ID</td> <td>General</td> <td>Bandwidth</td> <td>Metering</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>1</td> <td>10000</td> <td>kbps</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EgressPort</td> <td>Port 1</td> <td>Out-of-Profile DSCP</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Outgoing packet format for Egress port</td> <td colspan="3"> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Tag <input type="radio"/> Untag                 </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Priority</td> <td>0</td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> <tr> <td>DSCP</td> <td></td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> <tr> <td>TOS</td> <td>0</td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> </table>	VLAN ID	General	Bandwidth	Metering		1	10000	kbps	EgressPort	Port 1	Out-of-Profile DSCP	0	Outgoing packet format for Egress port	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Tag <input type="radio"/> Untag			Priority	0			DSCP				TOS	0		
	VLAN ID	General	Bandwidth	Metering																									
		1	10000	kbps																									
	EgressPort	Port 1	Out-of-Profile DSCP	0																									
	Outgoing packet format for Egress port	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Tag <input type="radio"/> Untag																											
	Priority	0																											
	DSCP																												
TOS	0																												
Action	Forwarding																												
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No change																												
	<input type="radio"/> Discard the packet																												
	<input type="radio"/> Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping																												
	Priority																												
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No change																												
	<input type="radio"/> Set the packet's 802.1 priority																												
	<input type="radio"/> Send the packet to priority queue																												
	<input type="radio"/> Replace the 802.1 priority field with the IP TOS value																												
	Diffserv																												
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No change																												
	<input type="radio"/> Set the packet's TOS field																												
	<input type="radio"/> Replace the IP TOS field with the 802.1 priority value																												
<input type="radio"/> Set the Diffserv Codepoint field in the frame																													
Outgoing																													
<input type="checkbox"/> Send the packet to the mirror port																													
<input type="checkbox"/> Send the packet to the egress port																													
<input type="checkbox"/> Send the matching frames(broadcast or DLF, multicast, marked for dropping or to be sent to the CPU) to the egress port																													
<input type="checkbox"/> Set the packet's VLAN ID																													
Metering																													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable																													
Out-of-profile action																													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Drop the packet																													
<input type="checkbox"/> Change the DSCP value																													
<input type="checkbox"/> Set Out-Drop Precedence																													
<input type="checkbox"/> Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping																													
<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/>																													
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Index</th> <th>Active</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Classifier(s)</th> <th>Delete</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="5" style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Index	Active	Name	Classifier(s)	Delete	<input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>																						
Index	Active	Name	Classifier(s)	Delete																									
<input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>																													

# CHAPTER 21

## Multicast

This chapter shows you how to configure various multicast features.

### 21.1 Multicast Overview

Traditionally, IP packets are transmitted in one of either two ways - Unicast (1 sender to 1 recipient) or Broadcast (1 sender to everybody on the network). Multicast delivers IP packets to just a group of hosts on the network.

IGMP (Internet Group Multicast Protocol) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. Refer to RFC 1112 and RFC 2236 for information on IGMP versions 1 and 2 respectively.

#### 21.1.1 IP Multicast Addresses

In IPv4, a multicast address allows a device to send packets to a specific group of hosts (multicast group) in a different subnetwork. A multicast IP address represents a traffic receiving group, not individual receiving devices. IP addresses in the Class D range (224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255) are used for IP multicasting. Certain IP multicast numbers are reserved by IANA for special purposes (see the IANA web site for more information).

#### 21.1.2 IGMP Filtering

With the IGMP filtering feature, you can control which IGMP groups a subscriber on a port can join. This allows you to control the distribution of multicast services (such as content information distribution) based on service plans and types of subscription.

You can set the switch to filter the multicast group join reports on a per-port basis by configuring an IGMP filtering profile and associating the profile to a port.

#### 21.1.3 IGMP Snooping

IGMP (Internet Group Multicast Protocol) is a session-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. Refer to *RFC 1112* and *RFC 2236* for information on IGMP versions 1 and 2 respectively.

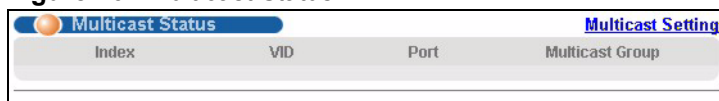
A switch can passively snoop on IGMP Query, Report and Leave (IGMP version 2) packets transferred between IP multicast routers/switches and IP multicast hosts to learn the IP multicast group membership. It checks IGMP packets passing through it, picks out the group registration information, and configures multicasting accordingly. IGMP snooping allows the switch to learn multicast groups without you having to manually configure them.

The switch forwards multicast traffic destined for multicast groups (that it has learned from IGMP snooping or that you have manually configured) to ports that are members of that group. The switch discards multicast traffic destined for multicast groups that it does not know. IGMP snooping generates no additional network traffic, allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your switch.

## 21.2 Multicast Status

Click **Advanced Applications** and **Multicast** to display the screen as shown. This screen shows the multicast group information.

**Figure 76** Multicast Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 52** Multicast Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the entry.
VID	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Port	This field displays the port number that belongs to the multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays IP multicast group addresses.

## 21.3 Multicast Setup

Click **Advanced Applications**, **Multicast** and the **Multicast Setting** link to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 77** Multicast Setting

Port	Immed. Leave	Group Limited	Max Group Num.	IGMP Filtering Profile	IGMP Querier Mode
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 53** Multicast Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP Snooping	
Active	Select <b>Active</b> to enable IGMP snooping to forward group multicast traffic only to ports that are members of that group.
Host Timeout	Specify the time (from 1 to 16,716,450) in seconds that elapses before the switch removes an IGMP group membership entry if it does not receive report messages from the host.
Leave Timeout	Enter an IGMP leave timeout value (from 1 to 16,716,450) in seconds. This defines how many seconds the switch waits before removing an IGMP snooping membership entry when an IGMP leave message is received from a host.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) to which the switch changes the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets. Otherwise, select <b>No-Change</b> to not replace the priority.
IGMP Filtering	Select <b>Active</b> to enable IGMP filtering to control which IGMP groups a subscriber on a port can join.
Unknown Multicast Frame	Specify the action to perform when the switch receives an unknown multicast frame. Select <b>Drop</b> to discard the frame(s). Select <b>Flooding</b> to send the frame(s) to all ports.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Immed. Leave	Select this option to set the switch to remove this port from the multicast tree when an IGMP version 2 leave message is received on this port. Select this option if there is only one host connected to this port.

**Table 53** Multicast Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Group Limited	Select this option to limit the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join.
Max Group Num.	Enter the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join. Once a port is registered in the specified number of multicast groups, any new IGMP join report frame(s) is dropped on this port.
IGMP Filtering Profile	Select the name of the IGMP filtering profile to use for this port. Otherwise, select <b>Default</b> to prohibit the port from joining any multicast group.
IGMP Querier Mode	The switch treats an IGMP query port as being connected to an IGMP multicast router (or server). The switch forwards IGMP join or leave packets to an IGMP query port.  Select <b>Auto</b> to have the switch dynamically change to using the port as an IGMP query port after it receives IGMP query packets.  Select <b>Fixed</b> to have the switch always use the port as an IGMP query port. Select this when you connect an IGMP multicast server to the port.  Select <b>Edge</b> to stop the switch from using the port as an IGMP query port. The switch will not keep any record of an IGMP router being connected to this port. The switch does not forward IGMP join or leave packets to this port.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 21.4 IGMP Filtering Profile

IGMP filter profiles allow you to control access to IGMP multicast groups. This allows you to have a service available to a specific IGMP multicast group. You can configure an IGMP filter profile for an IGMP multicast group that has access to a service (like a SIP server for example). Within a profile, configure an IGMP filter to specify the multicast IP address ranges. Then assign the IGMP filter profile to the ports (in the **Multicast Setting** screen) that are allowed to use the service.

Click **Advanced Applications** and **Multicast** in the navigation panel. Click the **Multicast Setting** link and then the **IGMP Filtering Profile** link to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 78** Multicast: IGMP Filtering Profile

The screenshot shows the 'IGMP Filtering Profile' configuration interface. At the top, there is a 'Profile Setup' section with a table for adding profiles. The table has columns for 'Profile Name', 'Start Address', and 'End Address'. Below the table are 'Add' and 'Clear' buttons. At the bottom, there is a table listing existing profiles, including a 'Default' profile with Start Address 0.0.0.0 and End Address 0.0.0.0. Below this table are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Profile Name	Start Address	End Address
	224.0.0.0	224.0.0.0

Add Clear

Profile Name	Start Address	End Address	Delete Profile	Delete Rule
Default	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 54** Multicast: IGMP Filtering Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile for identification purposes. To configure additional rule(s) for a profile that you have already added, enter the profile name and specify a different IP multicast address range.
Start Address	Type the starting multicast IP address for a range of multicast IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile.
End Address	Type the ending multicast IP address for a range of IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile. If you want to add a single multicast IP address, enter it in both the <b>Start Address</b> and <b>End Address</b> fields.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save the settings to the switch.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Profile Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the profile.
Start Address	This field displays the start of the multicast address range.
End Address	This field displays the end of the multicast address range.
Delete	To delete the profile(s) and all the accompanying rules, select the profile(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete Profile</b> column, then click the <b>Delete</b> button. To delete a rule(s) from a profile, select the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete Rule</b> column, then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete Profile/Delete Rule</b> check boxes.

## 21.5 MVR Overview

Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR) is designed for applications (such as Media-on-Demand (MoD)) that use multicast traffic across an Ethernet ring-based service provider network.

MVR allows one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network. While isolated in different subscriber VLANs, connected devices can subscribe to and unsubscribe from the multicast stream in the multicast VLAN. This improves bandwidth utilization with reduced multicast traffic in the subscriber VLANs and simplifies multicast group management.

You must enable IGMP snooping to use MVR. However, MVR only responds to IGMP join and leave control messages from multicast groups that are configured under MVR. Join and leave reports from other multicast groups are managed by IGMP snooping.

The following figure shows a network example. The subscriber VLAN (**1, 2 and 3**) information is hidden from the streaming media server, **S**. In addition, the multicast VLAN information is only visible to the switch and **S**.

**Figure 79** MVR Network Example

## 21.5.1 Types of MVR Ports

In MVR, a source port is a port on the switch that can send and receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN while a receiver port can only receive multicast data. Once configured, the switch maintains a forwarding table that matches the multicast stream to the associated multicast group.

## 21.5.2 MVR Modes

You can set your switch to operate in either dynamic or compatible mode.

In dynamic mode, the switch sends IGMP leave and join reports to the other multicast devices (such as multicast routers or servers) in the multicast VLAN. This allows the multicast devices to update the multicast forwarding table to forward or not forward multicast traffic to the receiver ports.

In compatible mode, the switch does not send any IGMP reports. In this case, you must manually configure the forwarding settings on the multicast devices in the multicast VLAN.

## 21.5.3 How MVR Works

The following figure shows a multicast television example where a subscriber device (such as a computer) in VLAN 1 receives multicast traffic from the streaming media server, **S**, via the switch. Multiple subscriber devices can connect through a port configured as the receiver on the switch.

When the subscriber selects a television channel, computer **A** sends an IGMP report to the switch to join the appropriate multicast group. If the IGMP report matches one of the configured MVR multicast group addresses on the switch, an entry is created in the forwarding table on the switch. This maps the subscriber VLAN to the list of forwarding destinations for the specified multicast traffic.

When the subscriber changes the channel or turns off the computer, an IGMP leave message is sent to the switch to leave the multicast group. The switch sends a query to VLAN 1 on the receiver port (in this case, a DSL port on the switch). If there is another subscriber device connected to this port in the same subscriber VLAN, the receiving port will still be on the list of forwarding destination for the multicast traffic. Otherwise, the switch removes the receiver port from the forwarding table.



**Figure 80** MVR Multicast Television Example

## 21.6 General MVR Configuration

Use the **MVR** screen to create multicast VLANs and select the receiver port(s) and a source port for each multicast VLAN. Click **Advanced Applications** and **Multicast** in the navigation panel. Click the **Multicast Setting** link and then the **MVR** link to display the screen as shown next.

**Note:** You can create up to three multicast VLANs and up to 256 multicast rules on the switch.

Your switch automatically creates a static VLAN (with the same VID) when you create a multicast VLAN in this screen.

**Figure 81** MVR

MVR
Multicast Setting    Group Configuration

---

Active

Name

Multicast VLAN ID

802.1p Priority

Mode  Dynamic  Compatible

---

Port	Source Port	Receiver Port	None	Tagging
1	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

---

VLAN	Active	Name	Mode	Source Port	Receiver Port	802.1p	Delete

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

**Table 55** MVR

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable MVR to allow one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Multicast VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID (1 to 4094) of the multicast VLAN.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) with which the switch replaces the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets (belonging to this multicast VLAN).
Mode	Specify the MVR mode on the switch. Choices are <b>Dynamic</b> and <b>Compatible</b> . Select <b>Dynamic</b> to send IGMP reports to all MVR source ports in the multicast VLAN. Select <b>Compatible</b> to set the switch not to send IGMP reports.
Port	This field displays the port number on the switch.
Source Port	This field is applicable for <b>Ethernet</b> ports. Select this option to set this port as the MVR source port that sends and receives multicast traffic. All source ports must belong to a single multicast VLAN.
Receiver Port	Select this option to set this port as a receiver port that only receives multicast traffic. A receiver port cannot belong to a multicast VLAN.
None	Select this option to set the port not to participate in MVR. No MVR multicast traffic is sent or received on this port.
Tagging	Select this checkbox if you want the port to tag the VLAN ID in all outgoing frames transmitted.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save the settings.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to discard all changes.
VLAN	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Active	This field displays whether the multicast group is enabled or not.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this setting.
Mode	This field displays the MVR mode.
Source Port	This field displays the source port number(s).
Receiver Port	This field displays the receiver port number(s).
Delete	To delete a multicast VLAN(s), select the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column, then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

## 21.7 MVR Group Configuration

All source ports and receiver ports belonging to a multicast group can receive multicast data sent to this multicast group.

Configure MVR IP multicast group address(es) in the **Group Configuration** screen. Click **Group Configuration** in the **MVR** screen.

**Note:** A port can belong to more than one multicast VLAN. However, IP multicast group addresses in different multicast VLANs cannot overlap.

**Figure 82** MVR Group Configuration

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 56** MVR Group Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Multicast VLAN ID	Select a multicast VLAN ID (that you configured in the <b>MVR</b> screen) from the drop-down list box.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes.
Start Address	Enter the starting IP multicast address of the multicast group in dotted decimal notation. Refer to <a href="#">Section 21.1.1 on page 131</a> for more information on IP multicast addresses.
End Address	Enter the ending IP multicast address of the multicast group in dotted decimal notation. Enter the same IP address as the <b>Start Address</b> field if you want to configure only one IP address for a multicast group. Refer to <a href="#">Section 21.1.1 on page 131</a> for more information on IP multicast addresses.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save the settings.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to discard all changes.
MVLAN	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this setting.
Start Address	This field displays the starting IP address of the multicast group.
End Address	This field displays the ending IP address of the multicast group.
Delete	Select <b>Delete All</b> and click <b>Delete</b> to remove all entries from the table. Select <b>Delete Group</b> and click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected entry(ies) from the table.
Cancel	Select <b>Cancel</b> to clear the checkbox(es) in the table.

## 21.7.1 MVR Configuration Example

The following figure shows a network example where ports 1, 2 and 3 on the switch belong to VLAN 1. In addition, port 7 belongs to the multicast group with VID 200 to receive multicast traffic (the **News** and **Movie** channels) from the remote streaming media server, **S**. Computers **A**, **B** and **C** in VLAN are able to receive the traffic.

**Figure 83** MVR Configuration Example

**MVR** Multicast Setting **Group Configuration**

Active

Name Premium

Multicast VLAN ID 200

802.1p Priority 3

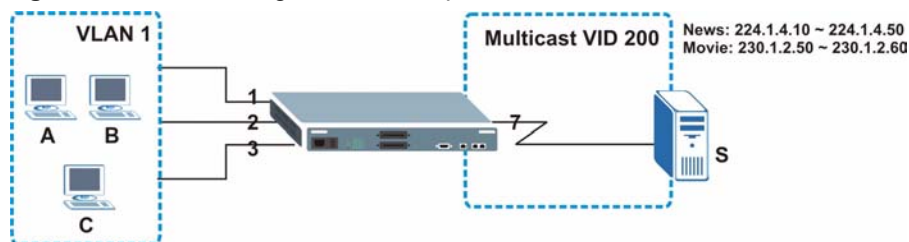
Mode  Dynamic  Compatible

Port	Source Port	Receiver Port	None	Tagging
1	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Add Cancel

To configure the MVR settings on the switch, create a multicast group in the **MVR** screen and set the receiver and source ports.

**Figure 84** MVR Configuration Example



To set the switch to forward the multicast group traffic to the subscribers, configure multicast group settings in the **Group Configuration** screen. The following figure shows an example where two multicast groups (**News** and **Movie**) are configured for the multicast VLAN 200.

**Figure 85** MVR Configuration Example

**Group Configuration** MVR

Multicast VLAN ID:

---

Name	Start Address	End Address
<input type="text" value="News"/>	<input type="text" value="224.1.4.10"/>	<input type="text" value="224.1.4.50"/>

MVLAN	Name	Start Address	End Address	Delete All	Delete Group
200	Movie	230.1.2.50	230.1.2.60	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Figure 86** MVR Configuration Example

**Group Configuration** MVR

Multicast VLAN ID:

---

Name	Start Address	End Address
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>

MVLAN	Name	Start Address	End Address	Delete All	Delete Group
200	Movie	230.1.2.50	230.1.2.60	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	News	224.1.4.10	224.1.4.50		<input type="checkbox"/>

# CHAPTER 22

## DHCP Relay

This chapter describes the DHCP relay and shows you how to configure the **DHCP Relay** screen.

### 22.1 DHCP Relay Overview

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual clients to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a DHCP server. You can configure the switch to relay client DHCP requests to a DHCP server and the server's responses back to the clients.

#### 22.1.1 DHCP “Relay Agent Information Option”

The switch can add information to client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server. This helps provide authentication about the source of the requests. You can also specify additional information for the switch to add to the client DHCP requests that it relays to the DHCP server. Please refer to RFC 3046 for more details.

#### 22.1.2 DHCP Relay Agent Circuit ID Sub-option Format

The DHCP relay agent information feature adds an Agent Information field to the option 82 field of the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames that the switch relays to a DHCP server. The Agent Information field that the switch adds contains an “Agent Circuit-ID sub-option” that includes the following information about where the DHCP request was received.

- Slot ID (1 byte, this is 0 with this model)
- Port ID (1 byte)
- VLAN ID (2 bytes)
- System name (up to 32 bytes, this is optional)

### 22.2 DHCP Relay Configuration

To configure DHCP relay information and specify the DHCP server(s), click **Advanced Application** and **DHCP Relay** to display the screen as shown next.

**Figure 87** DHCP Relay

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 57** DHCP Relay

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable DHCP relay.
Remote DHCP Server 1 .. 3	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server in dotted decimal notation.
Relay Agent Information	Select the <b>Option 82</b> check box to have the switch add information (slot number, port number and VLAN ID) to client TCP/IP configuration requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Information	This read-only field displays the system name you configure in the <b>General Setup</b> screen. Select the check box to add the switch name to the DHCP client requests that the switch relays to a DHCP server.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to inset the entry to the summary table below.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields back to your previous configuration.

# CHAPTER 23

## Routing Protocol

This chapter shows you how to configure the routing functions.

### 23.1 Static Route

Static routes tell the switch how to forward IP traffic when you configure the TCP/IP parameters manually.

Click **Routing Protocol** in the navigation panel and then **Static Routing** to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 88** Static Routing

The following table describes the related labels you use to create a static route.

**Table 58** Static Routing

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	This field allows you to activate/deactivate this static route.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this route. This is for identification purpose only.
Destination IP Address	This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination. Routing is always based on network number. If you need to specify a route to a single host, use a subnet mask of 255.255.255.255 in the subnet mask field to force the network number to be identical to the host ID.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for this destination.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your switch that will forward the packet to the destination. The gateway must be a router on the same segment as your switch.



**Table 58** Static Routing (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Metric	The metric represents the “cost” of transmission for routing purposes. IP routing uses hop count as the measurement of cost, with a minimum of 1 for directly connected networks. Enter a number that approximates the cost for this link. The number need not be precise, but it must be between 1 and 15. In practice, 2 or 3 is usually a good number.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save the new rule to the switch. It then displays in the summary table at the bottom of the screen.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to clear the fields to the factory defaults.

View the current static routes on the switch in the summary table at the bottom of the screen.

**Figure 89** Static Routing: Summary Table

Index	Active	Name	Destination Address	Subnet Mask	Gateway Address	Metric	Delete
1	Yes	ju	172.16.1.2	255.255.0.0	192.168.1.2	2	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in the summary table.

**Table 59** Static Routing: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of the route. Click a number to edit the static route entry.
Active	This field displays <b>Yes</b> when the static route is activated and <b>NO</b> when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this route. This is for identification purpose only.
Destination Address	This field displays the IP network address of the final destination.
Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask for this destination.
Gateway Address	This field displays the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your switch that will forward the packet to the destination.
Metric	This field displays the cost of transmission for routing purposes.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column, and then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the selected checkboxes in the <b>Delete</b> column.

# CHAPTER 24

## Maintenance

This chapter explains how to configure the maintenance screens. The links on the upper right of the Maintenance screen lead to different screens that let you maintain the firmware and configuration files.

### 24.1 Maintenance

Click **Management** and then **Maintenance** in the navigation panel to open the following screen.

**Figure 90** Maintenance



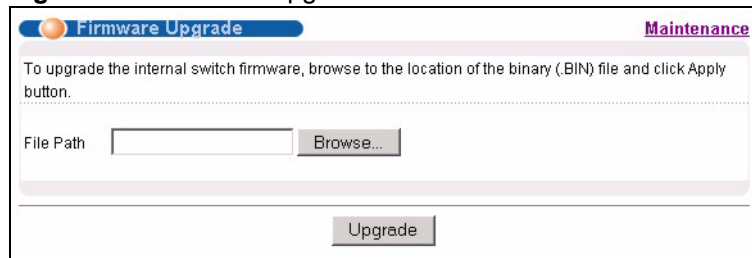
### 24.2 Firmware Upgrade

Click **Firmware Upgrade** in the **Maintenance** screen if you want to upgrade your switch firmware. See the **System Info** screen to verify your current firmware version number. Make sure you have downloaded (and unzipped) the correct model firmware and version to your computer before uploading to the device.

**Note:** Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.

From the **Maintenance** screen, display the **Firmware Upgrade** screen as shown next.

**Figure 91** Firmware Upgrade



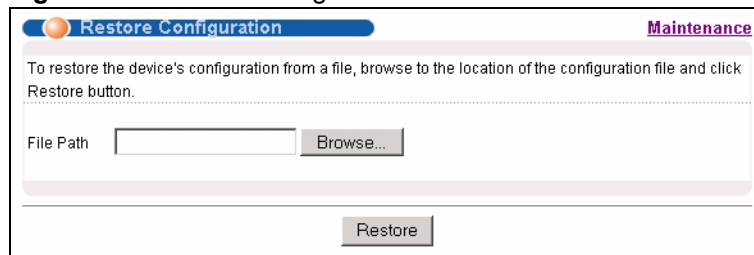
Type the path and file name of the firmware file you wish to upload to the switch in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. After you have specified the file, click **Upgrade**.

**Note:** The system does not restart automatically after you upload the firmware. You need to use the web configurator or the `boot config` command to restart the system to complete firmware upgrade.

## 24.3 Restore a Configuration File

Restore a previously saved configuration from your computer to the switch using the **Restore Configuration** screen.

**Figure 92** Restore Configuration



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Restore Configuration" under a "Maintenance" tab. It contains a text box for "File Path" and a "Browse..." button. Below the text box is a "Restore" button. The interface also includes a header with a logo and the title "Restore Configuration", and a sub-header "Maintenance". A message above the text box reads: "To restore the device's configuration from a file, browse to the location of the configuration file and click Restore button."

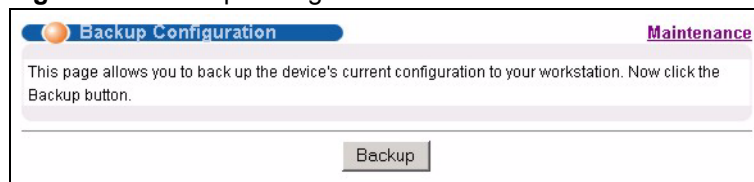
Type the path and file name of the configuration file you wish to restore in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to display a **Choose File** screen from which you can locate it. After you have specified the file, click **Restore**. "config" is the name of the configuration file on the switch, so your backup configuration file is automatically renamed when you restore using this screen.

## 24.4 Backing Up a Configuration File

Backing up your switch configurations allows you to create various "snap shots" of your device from which you may restore at a later date.

Back up your current switch configuration to a computer using the **Configuration Backup** screen.

**Figure 93** Backup Configuration



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Backup Configuration" under a "Maintenance" tab. It contains a "Backup" button. The interface also includes a header with a logo and the title "Backup Configuration", and a sub-header "Maintenance". A message above the button reads: "This page allows you to back up the device's current configuration to your workstation. Now click the Backup button."

Follow the steps below to back up the current switch configuration to your computer in this screen.

- 1 Click **Backup**.

- 2 Click **Save** to display the **Save As** screen.
- 3 Choose a location to save the file on your computer from the **Save in** drop-down list box and type a descriptive name for it in the **File name** list box. Click **Save** to save the configuration file to your computer.

## 24.5 Load Factory Defaults

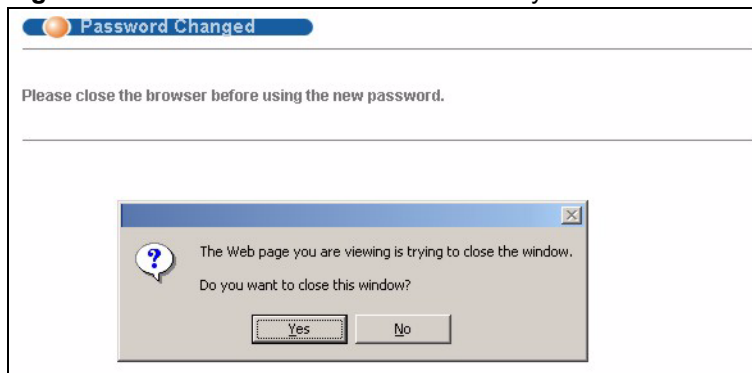
Press the **Click Here** button next to **Load Factory Defaults** to clear all switch configuration information you configured and return to the factory defaults. The following message appears.

**Figure 94** Confirm Load Factory Defaults



Click **OK** to go to the next screen.

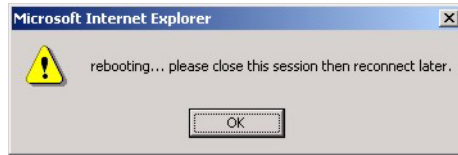
**Figure 95** Close Browser after Load Factory Defaults



Click **Yes** to close this window. Open a new browser window to access the switch web configurator again. You may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default switch IP address (192.168.1.1).

## 24.6 Reboot System

**Reboot System** allows you to restart the switch without physically turning the power off. Press the **Click Here** button next to **Reboot System** to display the next screen.

**Figure 96** Confirm Restart the Switch

Click **OK** and then wait for the switch to finish rebooting before you attempt to access the switch again. This takes up to two minutes. This does not affect the switch's configuration.

## 24.7 Command Line FTP

This section shows some examples of uploading to or downloading files from the switch using FTP commands. First, understand the filename conventions.

### 24.7.1 Filename Conventions

The configuration file (often called the romfile or rom-0) contains the factory default settings in the screens such as password, switch setup, IP setup, etc. Once you have customized the switch's settings, they can be saved back to your computer under a filename of your choosing.

**Note:** A configuration file that you save from your switch to your computer does not include the password, the error log or the trace log.

When you restore a backup configuration file from your computer to your switch, does not change the password, the error log or the trace log.

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System sometimes referred to as the "ras" file) is the system firmware and has a "bin" filename extension.

**Table 60** Filename Conventions

FILE TYPE	INTERNAL NAME	EXTERNAL NAME	DESCRIPTION
Configuration File	config		This is the configuration filename on the switch. Uploading the config file replaces the specified configuration file system, including your switch configurations and system-related data.
Firmware	ras	*.bin	This is the generic name for the ZyNOS firmware on the switch.

#### 24.7.1.1 Example FTP Commands

```
ftp> put firmware.bin ras
```

This is a sample FTP session showing the transfer of the computer file "firmware.bin" to the switch .

```
ftp> get config config.cfg
```

This is a sample FTP session saving the current configuration to a file called "config.cfg" on your computer.

If your (T)FTP client does not allow you to have a destination filename different than the source, you will need to rename them as the switch only recognizes "config" and "ras". Be sure you keep unaltered copies of both files for later use.

**Note:** Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.

## 24.7.2 FTP Command Line Procedure

- 1 Launch the FTP client on your computer.
- 2 Enter "open", followed by a space and the IP address of your switch.
- 3 Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.
- 4 Enter your password as requested (the default is "1234").
- 5 Enter "bin" to set transfer mode to binary.
- 6 Use "put" to transfer files from the computer to the switch, for example, "put firmware.bin ras" transfers the firmware on your computer (firmware.bin) to the switch and renames it "ras". Similarly, "put config.cfg config" transfers the configuration file on your computer (config.cfg) to the switch and renames it "config". Likewise "get config config.cfg" transfers the configuration file on the switch to your computer and renames it "config.cfg." See earlier in this chapter for more information on filename conventions.
- 7 Enter "quit" to exit the ftp prompt.

## 24.7.3 GUI-based FTP Clients

The following table describes some of the commands that you may see in GUI-based FTP clients.

**Table 61** General Commands for GUI-based FTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host Address	Enter the address of the host server.
Login Type	Anonymous. This is when a user I.D. and password is automatically supplied to the server for anonymous access. Anonymous logins will work only if your ISP or service administrator has enabled this option. Normal. The server requires a unique User ID and Password to login.

**Table 61** General Commands for GUI-based FTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Transfer Type	Transfer files in either ASCII (plain text format) or in binary mode. Configuration and firmware files should be transferred in binary mode.
Initial Remote Directory	Specify the default remote directory (path).
Initial Local Directory	Specify the default local directory (path).

## 24.7.4 FTP Restrictions

FTP will not work when:

- FTP service is disabled in the **Access Control** screen.
- The IP address(es) in the **Secured Client Set** in the **Remote Management** screen does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the switch will disconnect the Telnet session immediately

# CHAPTER 25

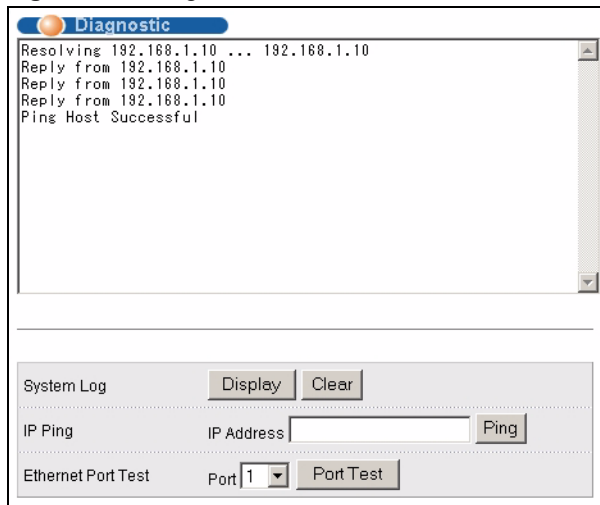
## Diagnostic

This chapter explains the Diagnostic screens.

### 25.1 Diagnostic

Click **Management** and then **Diagnostic** in the navigation panel to display this screen. Use this screen to check system logs, ping IP addresses or perform loopback tests on a port.

**Figure 97** Diagnostic



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 62** Diagnostic

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Log	Click <b>Display</b> to display a log of events in the multi-line text box. Click <b>Clear</b> to empty the text box and reset the syslog entry.
IP Ping	Type the IP address of a device that you want to ping in order to test a connection. Click <b>Ping</b> to have the switch ping the IP address (in the field to the left).
Ethernet Port Test	From the <b>Port</b> drop-down list box, select a port number and click <b>Port Test</b> to perform internal loopback test.



# CHAPTER 26

## Syslog

This chapter explains the syslog screens.

### 26.1 Syslog

The syslog protocol allows devices to send event notification messages across an IP network to syslog servers that collect the event messages. A syslog-enabled device can generate a syslog message and send it to a syslog server.

Syslog is defined in RFC 3164. The RFC defines the packet format, content and system log related information of syslog messages. Each syslog message has a facility and severity level. The syslog facility identifies a file in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for details. The following table describes the syslog severity levels.

**Table 63** Syslog Severity Levels

NUMERICAL CODE	SEVERITY
0	Emergency: The system is unusable.
1	Alert: Action must be taken immediately.
2	Critical: The system condition is critical.
3	Error: There is an error condition on the system.
4	Warning: There is a warning condition on the system.
5	Notice: There is a normal but significant condition on the system.
6	Informational: The syslog contains an informational message.
7	Debug: The message is intended for debug-level purposes.

### 26.2 Syslog Setup

Click **Management** and then **Syslog** in the navigation panel to display this screen. The syslog feature sends logs to an external syslog server. Use this screen to configure the device's system logging settings.

**Figure 98** Syslog Setup

Logging type	Active	Facility
System	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0
Interface	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0
Switch	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0
Authentication	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0
IP	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 64** Syslog Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Syslog	Select this check box to turn on syslog (system logging) and then configure the syslog settings.
Logging type	This column displays the names of the categories of logs that the device can generate.
Active	Select this option to set the device to generate logs for the corresponding category.
Facility	The log facility allows you to send logs to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the device.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 26.3 Syslog Server Setup

Click **Management** and then **Syslog** in the navigation panel to display the **Syslog Setup** screen. Click the **Syslog Server Setup** link to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure a list of external syslog servers.

**Figure 99** Syslog Server Setup

Index	Active	IP Address	Log Level	Delete
1	Yes	1.2.3.4	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Yes	1.2.3.5	0-1	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	No	1.2.3.6	0-2	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 65** Syslog Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to have the device send logs to this syslog server. Clear the check box if you want to create a syslog server entry but not have the device send logs to it (you can edit the entry later).
Server Address	Enter the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	Select the severity level(s) of the logs that you want the device to send to this syslog server. The lower the number, the more critical the logs are.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your changes back to the device. The entry displays in the table below.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to return the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of a syslog server entry. Click this number to edit the entry.
Active	This field displays <b>Yes</b> if the device is to send logs to the syslog server. <b>No</b> displays if the device is not to send logs to the syslog server.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	This field displays the severity level of the logs that the device is to send to this syslog server.
Delete	Select an entry's <b>Delete</b> check box and click <b>Delete</b> to remove the entry.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# CHAPTER 27

## Cluster Management

This chapter introduces cluster management.

### 27.1 Introduction to Cluster Management

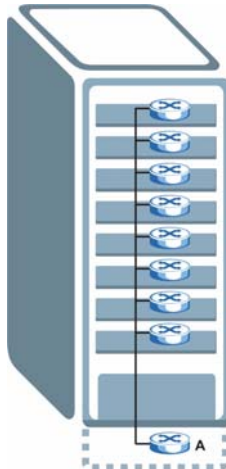
Cluster Management<sup>2</sup> allows you to manage switches through one switch, called the cluster manager. The switches must be directly connected and be in the same VLAN group so as to be able to communicate with one another.

**Table 66** ZyXEL Clustering Management Specifications

Maximum number of cluster members	24
Cluster Member Models	Must be compatible with ZyXEL cluster management implementation.
Cluster Manager	The switch through which you manage the cluster member switches.
Cluster Members	The switches being managed by the cluster manager switch.

In the following example, switch A in the basement is the cluster manager and the other switches on the upper floors of the building are cluster members.

**Figure 100** Clustering Application Example

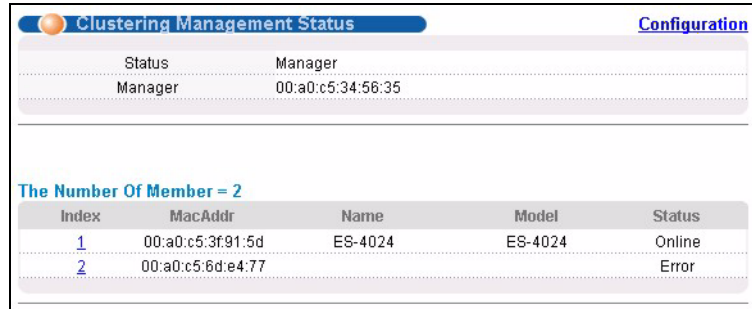


2. Cluster management may also be referred to as “iStacking” in other ZyXEL documentation.

## 27.2 Cluster Management Status

Click **Management** in the navigation panel and then **Cluster Management** to display the following screen.

**Figure 101** Cluster Management Status



Index	MacAddr	Name	Model	Status
1	00:a0:c5:3f:91:5d	ES-4024	ES-4024	Online
2	00:a0:c5:6d:e4:77			Error

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

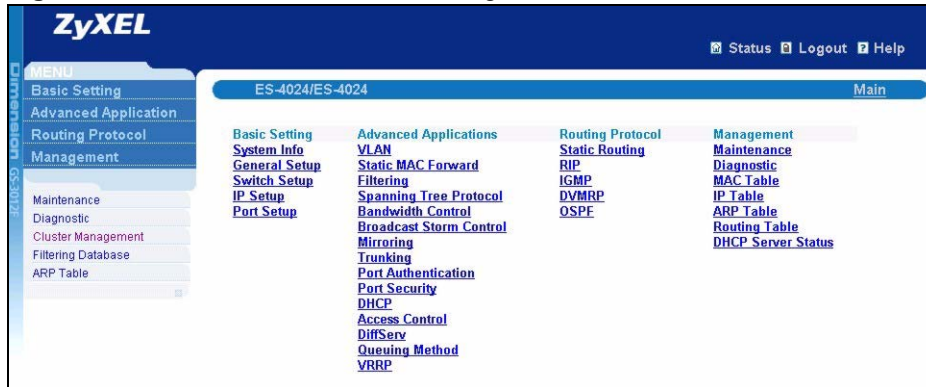
**Table 67** Cluster Management Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	A cluster can only have one manager.
Status	This field displays the role of this switch within the cluster. <b>Manager</b> <b>Member</b> (you see this if you access this screen in the cluster member switch directly and not via the cluster manager) <b>None</b> (neither a manager nor a member of a cluster)
Manager	This field displays the cluster manager switch's hardware MAC Address.
The Number of Member	This field displays the number of switches that make up this cluster. The following fields describe the cluster member switches.
Index	You can manage cluster member switches via the cluster manager switch. Each number in the <b>Index</b> column is a hyperlink leading to the cluster member switch's web configurator (see <a href="#">Figure 102 on page 158</a> ).
MacAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC Address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's <b>System Name</b> .
Model	This field displays the model name.
Status	This field displays: <b>Online</b> (the cluster member switch is accessible) <b>Error</b> (for example the cluster member switch password was changed or the switch was set as the manager and so left the member list, etc.) <b>Offline</b> (the switch is disconnected - <b>Offline</b> shows approximately 1.5 minutes after the link between cluster member and manager goes down).

## 27.2.1 Cluster Member Switch Management

Go to the **Clustering Management Status** screen of the cluster manager switch and then select an **Index** hyperlink from the list of members to go to that cluster member switch's web configurator home page. This cluster member web configurator home page and the home page that you'd see if you accessed it directly are different.

**Figure 102** Cluster Member Web Configuration Screen



### 27.2.1.1 Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

You can use FTP to upload firmware to a cluster member switch through the cluster manager switch as shown in the following example.

**Figure 103** Example: Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

```
C:\> ftp <Cluster Manager IP address>
Connected to 192.168.0.1.
220 GS-3012F FTP version 1.0 ready at Thu Jan  1 00:31:12 1970
User (192.168.0.1:(none)): admin
331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> ls
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for LIST
--w--w--w-  1 owner   group      3075006 Jul  01 12:00 ras
-rw-rw-rw-  1 owner   group      393216  Jul  01 12:00 config
--w--w--w-  1 owner   group           0 Jul  01 12:00 fw-00-13-49-00-00-02
-rw-rw-rw-  1 owner   group           0 Jul  01 12:00 config-00-13-49-00-00-02
226 File sent OK
ftp: 296 bytes received in 0.01Seconds 19.73Kbytes/sec.
ftp> put 360ABM4.bin fw-00-13-49-00-00-02
ftp> bye
```

The following table explains some of the FTP parameters.

**Table 68** FTP Upload to Cluster member Example

FTP PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
User name	Press [ENTER]
Password	The web configurator password default is 1234.
ls	Enter this command to list the name of cluster member switch's firmware and configuration file.
fw-00-13-49-00-00-02	The cluster member switch's firmware name as seen in the cluster manager switch.
config-00-13-49-00-00-02	The cluster member switch's configuration file name as seen in the cluster manager switch.
360ABM4.bin	The name of the firmware file you want to upload to the cluster member switch.

## 27.3 Configuring Cluster Management

Click **Configuration** from the **Cluster Management** screen to display the next screen.

**Figure 104** Configuring Cluster Management

**Clustering Management Configuration** [Status](#)

**Clustering Manager:**

Active

Name

VID

**Clustering Candidate:**



List

Password

Index	MacAddr	Name	Model	Remove
1	00:a0:c5:3f:91:5d	ES-4024	ES-4024	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	00:a0:c5:6d:e4:77			<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 69** Configuring Cluster Management

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clustering Manager	
Active	Select <b>Active</b> to have this switch become the cluster manager switch. A cluster can only have one manager. Other (directly connected) switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the <b>Clustering Candidates</b> list. If a switch that was previously a cluster member is later set to become a cluster manager, then its <b>Status</b> is displayed as <b>Error</b> in the <b>Cluster Management Status</b> screen and a warning icon (  ) appears in the member summary list below.
Name	Type a name to identify the <b>Clustering Manager</b> . You may use up to 32 printable characters (no spaces are allowed).
VID	This is the Management VLAN ID and is only applicable if the switch is set to <b>802.1Q</b> VLAN. All switches must be in the same management VLAN group to belong to the same cluster. Switches that are not in the same management VLAN group are not visible in the <b>Clustering Candidates</b> list. This field is ignored if the <b>Clustering Manager</b> is using <b>Port-based</b> VLAN.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save these changes to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this part of the screen afresh.
Clustering Candidate	The following fields relate to the switches that are potential cluster members.
List	A list of suitable candidates found by auto-discovery is shown here. The switches must be directly connected. Directly connected switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the <b>Clustering Candidate</b> list. Switches that are not in the same management VLAN group will not be visible in the <b>Clustering Candidate</b> list.
Password	Each cluster member's password is its web configurator password. Select a member in the <b>Clustering Candidate</b> list and then enter its web configurator password. If that switch administrator changes the web configurator password afterwards, then it cannot be managed from the <b>Cluster Manager</b> . Its <b>Status</b> is displayed as <b>Error</b> in the <b>Cluster Management Status</b> screen and a warning icon (  ) appears in the member summary list below.  If multiple devices have the same password then hold [SHIFT] and click those switches to select them. Then enter their common web configurator password.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save these changes to the switch.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this part of the screen afresh.
Refresh	Click <b>Refresh</b> to perform auto-discovery again to list potential cluster members.
The next summary table shows the devices selected for clustering.	
Index	This is the index number of a cluster member switch.
MAC Address	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's <b>System Name</b> .
Model	This is the cluster member switch's model name.
Remove	Select this checkbox and then click the <b>Remove</b> button to remove a cluster member switch from the cluster.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this part of the screen afresh.



# CHAPTER 28

## MAC Table

This chapter introduces MAC Table.

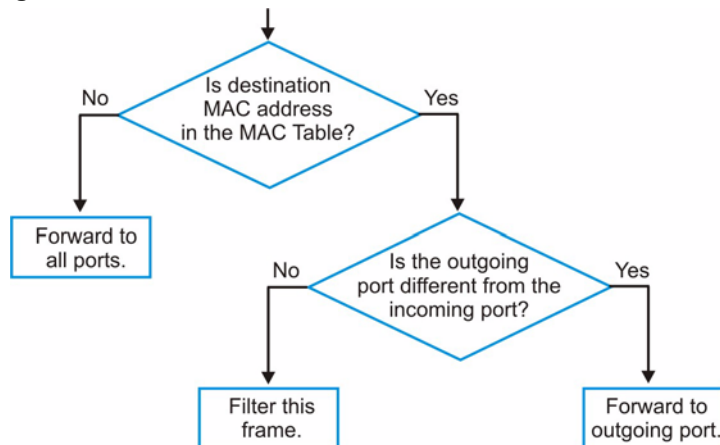
### 28.1 Introduction to MAC Table

The MAC table shows how frames are forwarded or filtered across the switch's ports. It shows what device MAC address, belonging to what VLAN group (if any) is forwarded to which port(s) and whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the switch) or static (manually entered in **Static MAC Forwarding**).

The switch uses the Filtering Database to determine how to forward frames. See the following figure.

- 1 The switch examines a received frame and learns the port on which this source MAC address came.
- 2 The switch checks to see if the frame's destination MAC address matches a source MAC address already learned in the Filtering Database.
  - If the switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, then it forwards the frame to that port.
  - If the switch has not already learned the port for this MAC address, then the frame is flooded to all ports. Too much port flooding leads to network congestion.
  - If the switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, but the destination port is the same as the port it came in on, then it filters the frame.

**Figure 105** MAC Table Flowchart



## 28.2 Viewing MAC Table

Click **Management** in the navigation panel and then **MAC Table** to display the following screen. The MAC Table can hold up to 16K entries.

**Figure 106** MAC Table

Index	MAC Address	VID	Port	Type
1	00:00:01:aa:bb:cc	1	4	dynamic
2	00:00:04:a0:00:31	1	4	dynamic
3	00:00:04:a0:00:35	1	4	dynamic
4	00:00:1c:d4:ae:04	1	4	dynamic
5	00:00:85:0b:61:30	1	4	dynamic
6	00:00:86:46:4c:0e	1	4	dynamic
7	00:00:86:46:fc:a4	1	4	dynamic
8	00:00:86:47:0c:66	1	4	dynamic
9	00:00:86:47:11:91	1	4	dynamic
10	00:00:e2:82:90:b5	1	4	dynamic

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 70** MAC Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Sort by	Click one of the following buttons to display and arrange the data according to that button type. The information is then displayed in the summary table below.
MAC	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to MAC address.
VID	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to VLAN group.
Port	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to port number.
Index	This is the incoming frame index number.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device from which this incoming frame came.
VID	This is the VLAN group to which this frame belongs.
Port	This is the port from which the above MAC address was learned.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the switch) or static (manually entered in <b>Static MAC Forwarding</b> ).

# CHAPTER 29

## ARP Table

This chapter introduces ARP Table.

### 29.1 Introduction to ARP Table

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network.

An IP (version 4) address is 32 bits long. In an Ethernet LAN, MAC addresses are 48 bits long. The ARP Table maintains an association between each MAC address and its corresponding IP address.

#### 29.1.1 How ARP Works

When an incoming packet destined for a host device on a local area network arrives at the switch, the switch's ARP program looks in the ARP Table and, if it finds the address, sends it to the device.

If no entry is found for the IP address, ARP broadcasts the request to all the devices on the LAN. The switch fills in its own MAC and IP address in the sender address fields, and puts the known IP address of the target in the target IP address field. In addition, the switch puts all ones in the target MAC field (FF.FF.FF.FF.FF.FF is the Ethernet broadcast address). The replying device (which is either the IP address of the device being sought or the router that knows the way) replaces the broadcast address with the target's MAC address, swaps the sender and target pairs, and unicasts the answer directly back to the requesting machine. ARP updates the ARP Table for future reference and then sends the packet to the MAC address that replied.

### 29.2 Viewing ARP Table

Click **Management** in the navigation panel and then **ARP Table** to open the following screen. The ARP table can hold up to 500 entries.

**Figure 107** ARP Table

ARP Table			
Index	IP Address	MAC Address	Type
1	127.0.0.101	00:a0:c5:32:71:95	dynamic
2	127.0.0.102	00:a0:c5:32:71:97	dynamic
3	127.0.0.103	00:a0:c5:61:28:92	dynamic
4	127.0.0.104	00:a0:c5:ff:12:6c	dynamic
5	127.0.0.105	00:a0:c5:4b:d6:67	dynamic
6	169.254.170.66	00:0b:cd:94:85:00	dynamic
7	172.17.2.1	00:60:b0:d6:e1:ad	dynamic
8	172.17.2.4	00:01:e6:61:26:d4	dynamic
9	172.17.2.6	00:10:83:95:30:a1	dynamic
10	172.17.2.254	00:01:30:b8:16:40	dynamic
11	172.21.0.2	00:05:5d:04:30:f1	dynamic
12	172.21.0.254	00:01:30:b8:16:40	dynamic
13	172.21.1.166	00:02:b3:2c:79:93	dynamic
14	172.21.2.229	00:50:8d:36:37:e2	dynamic
15	172.21.3.6	00:50:8d:36:3c:3b	dynamic
16	172.21.3.7	00:50:ba:ad:75:dd	dynamic
17	172.21.3.11	00:50:8d:af:13:31	dynamic
18	172.21.3.15	00:00:e8:89:88:06	dynamic
19	172.21.3.18	00:50:8d:af:2f:28	dynamic
20	172.21.3.19	00:a0:c5:01:23:46	dynamic
21	172.21.3.20	08:00:46:68:10:58	dynamic
22	172.21.3.21	00:0b:cd:94:89:32	dynamic
23	172.21.3.23	00:00:e2:93:68:06	dynamic
24	172.21.3.25	00:05:5d:e1:6c:cb	dynamic

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 71** ARP Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the ARP Table entry number.
IP Address	This is the learned IP address of a device connected to a switch port with corresponding MAC address below.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device with corresponding IP address above.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the switch) or static (manually entered in <b>Static MAC Forwarding</b> ).



# CHAPTER 30

## Introducing the Commands

This chapter introduces the commands and gives a summary of commands available.

### 30.1 Overview

In addition to the web configurator, you can use line commands to configure the switch. Use line commands for advanced switch diagnosis and troubleshooting. If you have problems with your switch, customer support may request that you issue some of these commands to assist them in troubleshooting.

#### 30.1.1 Switch Configuration File

When you configure the switch using either the CLI or web configurator, the settings are saved as a series of commands in a configuration file on the switch. You can perform the following with a configuration file:

- Back up switch configuration once the switch is set up to work in your network.
- Restore switch configuration.
- Use the same configuration file to set all switches (of the same model) in your network to the same settings.

**Note:** You may also edit a configuration file using a text editor.

Make sure you use valid commands. The switch rejects configuration files with invalid or incomplete commands.

### 30.2 Accessing the CLI

You can use a direct console connection or Telnet to access the CLI on the switch.

**Note:** The switch automatically logs you out of the management interface after five minutes of inactivity. If this happens to you, simply log back in again.

#### 30.2.1 Access Priority

- You can only access the CLI with the administrator account (the default username is **admin** and password is **1234**).
- By default, only one concurrent access to the CLI is allowed via either the console port or Telnet. Console port access has higher priority.

- Use the `configure multi-login` command in the configuration mode to allow multiple concurrent logins. However, no more than five concurrent login sessions are allowed.

## 30.2.2 The Console Port

Connect to the switch's console port using a terminal emulation software configured to the following settings:

- VT100 terminal emulation
- 9600 bps
- No parity
- 8 data bits
- 1 stop bit
- No flow control

### 30.2.2.1 Initial Screen

When you turn on your switch, it performs several internal tests as well as line initialization. You can view the initialization information using the console port. After the initialization, the login screen displays (refer to *Section The Login Screen* ).

**Figure 108** Initial Console Port Screen

```
Copyright (c) 1994 - 2005 ZyXEL Communications Corp.
initialize mgmt, ethernet address: 00:13:49:00:00:01
initialize switch, ethernet address: 00:13:49:00:00:02
Initializing switch unit 0...
Press ENTER to continue...
```

## 30.2.3 Telnet

Use the following steps to telnet into your switch.

- 1** For local management, connect your computer to the RJ-45 management port (labeled **MGMT**) on the switch.
- 2** Make sure your computer IP address and the switch IP address are on the same subnet. In Windows, click **Start** (usually in the bottom left corner), **Run** and then type “`telnet 192.168.1.1`” (the default management IP address) and click **OK**.
- 3** A login screen displays (refer to *Section The Login Screen* ).

## 30.3 The Login Screen

After you have successfully established a connection to the switch using a direct console connection or Telnet, a login screen displays as shown below. For your first login, enter the default administrator login username “admin” and password “1234”.

**Figure 109** CLI: Login Screen

```
Enter User Name : admin
Enter Password : XXXX
```

## 30.4 Command Syntax Conventions

The rules of the commands are listed next.

- The command keywords are in `courier new` font.
- The required fields in a command are enclosed in angle brackets `<>`, for instance, `ping <ip>` means that you must specify an IP number for this command.
- The optional fields in a command are enclosed in square brackets `[]`, for instance, `configure snmp-server [contact <system contact>] [location <system location>]` means that the `contact` and `location` fields are optional.
- “Command” refers to a command used in the command line interface (CLI command).
- The `|` symbol means “or”.
- The entry `<cr>` in the command lines refers to carriage return. Press [ENTER] or carriage return after a command to execute the command.
- Use the up (↑) or down (↓) arrow key to scroll through the command history list.
- The CLI does not accept partial or incomplete commands. You may enter a unique part of a command and press [TAB] to have the switch automatically display the full command. For example, if you enter “`config`” and press [TAB], the full command of “`configuration`” automatically displays.
- Each interface refers to an Ethernet port on the switch. Commands configured after the interface command correspond to those ports.
- Type multiple ports or port ranges separated by a comma. Ranges of port numbers are typed separated by a dash.

## 30.5 Getting Help

The system includes a help facility to provide you with the following information about the commands:

- List of available commands under a command group.
- Detailed descriptions of the commands.



### 30.5.1 List of Available Commands

Enter “help” to display a list of available commands and the corresponding sub commands.

Enter “?” to display a list of commands you can use.

**Figure 110** CLI Help: List of Commands: Example 1

```
ras> help
  Commands available:
  help
  logout
  exit
  history
  enable
  show ip <cr>
  show hardware-monitor <C|F>
  show system-information
  ping help
  ping <ip|host-name> [vlan <vlan-id>][..]
  ping <ip|host-name> <cr>
  traceroute help
  traceroute <ip|host-name> [vlan <vlan-id>][..]
  traceroute <ip|host-name> <cr>
  ssh <1|2> <[user@]dest-ip> [command </>]
  ssh <1|2> <[user@]dest-ip> <cr>
ras>
```

**Figure 111** CLI Help: List of Commands: Example 2

```
ras> ?
  enable           Turn on privileged commands
  exit             Exit from the EXEC
  help             Description of the interactive help system
  history          Show a list of previously run commands
  logout          Exit from the EXEC
  ping            Exec ping
  show            Show system information
  ssh             SSH client
  traceroute      Exec traceroute
ras>
```

### 30.5.2 Detailed Command Information

Enter <command> help to display detailed sub command and parameters.

Enter <command> ? to display detailed help information about the sub commands and parameters.

**Figure 112** CLI Help: Detailed Command Information: Example 1

```

ras> ping help
  Commands available:
  ping <ip|host-name>
    <
      [ in-band|out-of-band|vlan <vlan-id> ]
      [ size <0-1472> ]
      [ -t ]
    >
ras>

```

**Figure 113** CLI: Help: Detailed Command Information: Example 2

```

ras> ping ?
  <ip|host-name>          destination ip address
  help                   Description of ping help

```

## 30.6 Command Modes

There are three CLI command modes: User, Enable and Configure.

When you first log into the CLI, the initial command mode is the User mode. The User mode commands are a subset of the Enable mode commands. The User mode command prompt ends with an angle bracket (>).

To enter Enable (or privileged) mode, type “enable” and enter a password when prompted (the default is 1234). When you enter the Enable mode, the command prompt changes to the pound sign (#).

To enter the configuration mode, type “configuration” or “config”. The Configure mode command prompt consists of the word “config” and the pound sign (#). There are two sub configuration modes: VLAN and interface. To enter config-vlan mode, type “vlan” followed by a number (between 1 to 4094). For example, `vlan 10`. To enter config-interface mode, enter `interface port-channel` followed by a port number. For example, `interface port-channel 10`.

Enter “exit” to quit from the current mode or log out from the CLI.

## 30.7 Using Command History

The switch keeps a list of commands you have entered for the current CLI session. You can use any commands in the history again by pressing the up (▲) or down (▼) arrow key to scroll through the previously used commands and press [ENTER]. Use the history command to display the list of commands.

**Figure 114** CLI: History Command Example

```
ras> history
  enable
  exit
  show ip
  history
ras>
```

## 30.8 Saving Your Configuration

After you set the switch settings with the configuration commands, use the `write memory` command to save the changes permanently.

**Figure 115** CLI: write memory

```
ras# write memory
```

**Note:** The `write memory` command is not available in User mode.

You must save your changes after each CLI session. All unsaved configuration changes are lost once you restart the switch.

### 30.8.1 Logging Out

In User mode, enter the `exit` command to log out of the CLI.

## 30.9 Command Summary

The following sections summarize the commands available in the switch together with a brief description of each command. Commands listed in the tables are in the same order as they are displayed in the CLI. See the related section in the User's Guide for more background information.

### 30.9.1 User Mode

The following table describes the commands available for User mode.

**Table 72** Command Summary: User Mode

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
enable			Accesses Enable (or privileged) mode.
exit			Logs out from the CLI.

**Table 72** Command Summary: User Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
help		Displays help information.
history		Displays a list of previously command(s) that you have executed. The switch stores up to 256 commands in history.
logout		Exits the CLI.
ping	<IP host-name> [<in-band out-of-band vlan <vlan-id>] [size <0-1472>] [-t]	Sends a Ping request to an Ethernet device.
show	hardware-monitor<C F>	Displays current hardware monitor information with the specified temperature unit (Celsius C or Fahrenheit F).
	ip	Displays IP related information.
	system-information	Displays general system information.
ssh	<1 2> <[user@]dest-ip>	Connects to an SSH server with the specified SSH version.
traceroute	<ip host-name> [in-band out-of-band vlan <vlan-id>] [ttl <1-255>] [wait <1-60>] [queries <1-10>]	Determines the path a packet takes to a device.

## 30.9.2 Enable Mode

The following table describes the commands available for Enable mode.

**Table 73** Command Summary: Enable Mode

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION	
baudrate	<1 2 3 4 5>	Changes the console port speed. Choices are 1 (38400), 2 (19200), 3(9600), 4 (57600) and 5 (115200).	
boot	config <index>	Restarts the system with the specified configuration file (1 or 2).	
configure		Accesses Configuration mode.	
copy	running-config tftp <ip> <remote-file>	Backs up running configuration to the specified TFTP server with the specified file name.	
	tftp	config <index> <ip> <remote-file>	Restores configuration with the specified filename from the specified TFTP server.

**Table 73** Command Summary: Enable Mode (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
		flash <ip> <remote-file>	Restores firmware via TFTP.
disable			Exits Enable (or privileged) mode.
enable			Accesses Enable (or privileged) mode.
erase	running-config		Resets to the factory default settings.
exit			Exits the CLI.
help			Displays help information.
history			Displays a list of command(s) that you have previously executed.
igmp-flush			Removes all IGMP information.
kick tcp	<Session ID>		Drops a TCP session.
logout			Exits the CLI.
mac-flush			Clears the MAC address table.
	<port-num>		Removes all learned MAC address on the specified port(s).
no	arp		Flushes the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) table.
	interface <port-number>		Clears the interface status of the specified port(s).
	logging		Clears the system log.
ping	<ip host-name> [<in-band out-of-band vlan <vlan-id>] [size <0-1472>] [-t]		Sends a Ping request to an Ethernet device.
reload	config <index>		Restarts the system with the specified configuration file.
show			
	classifier		Displays all classifier related information.
		<name>	Displays the specified classifier related information.
	cluster		Displays cluster management status.
		candidates	Displays cluster candidate information.
		member	Displays the status of the cluster member(s).
		member config	Displays the configuration of the cluster member(s).

**Table 73** Command Summary: Enable Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	member mac <mac-addr>	Displays the MAC address of the cluster member(s).
	garp	Displays GARP information.
	hardware-monitor <C F>	Displays current hardware monitor information with the specified temperature unit (Celsius <b>C</b> or Fahrenheit <b>F</b> ).
	https	Displays the HTTPS information.
	certificate	Displays the HTTPS certificates.
	key <rsa dsa>	Displays the HTTPS key.
	session	Displays current HTTPS session(s).
	timeout	Displays the HTTPS session timeout.
	igmp-filtering profile	Displays IGMP filter profile settings.
	igmp-snooping	Displays IGMP snooping settings.
	interface <port-number>	Displays current interface status.
	interfaces config <port-list>	Displays current interface configuration.
	bandwidth-control	Displays bandwidth control settings.
	bstorm-control	Displays broadcast storm control settings.
	egress	Displays outgoing port information.
	igmp-immediate-leave	Displays IGMP immediate leave settings.
	igmp-filtering	Displays IGMP filter profile settings.
	igmp-group-limited	Displays IGMP group settings.
	igmp-query-mode	Displays IGMP query mode settings on the port(s).
	ip	Displays IP related information.
	TCP	Displays the switch's current TCP sessions.
	UDP	Displays the switch's current UDP sessions.
	ip arp	Displays the ARP table.
	ip route	Displays IP routing information.
	ip route static	Displays IP static route information.
	lacp	Link Aggregation Control Protocol.
	logging	Displays system logs.

**Table 73** Command Summary: Enable Mode (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
	loginPrecedence		Displays login precedence settings.
	logins		Displays login account information.
	mac	address-table static	Displays static MAC address table. You can sort by MAC address, VID or port.
		address-table <all> <mac vid port>	Displays MAC address table. You can sort by MAC address, VID or port.
		address-table count	Displays the total number of MAC addresses in the MAC address table.
	mac-aging-time		Displays MAC learning aging time.
	multi-login		Displays multi-login information
	multicast		Displays multicast settings.
	mvr		Displays all MVR (Multicast VLAN Registration) settings.
		<vlan-id>	Displays specified MVR information.
	policy		Displays all policy related information.
		<name>	Displays the specified policy related information.
	port-access-authenticator		Displays all port authentication settings.
		<port-list>	Displays port authentication settings on the specified port(s).
	port-security		Displays all port security settings.
		<port-list>	Displays port security settings on the specified port(s).
	radius-server		Displays RADIUS server settings.
	remote-management		Displays all secured client information.
		<index>	Displays the specified secured client information.
	running-config		Displays current operating configuration.
	service-control		Displays service control settings.
	snmp-server		Displays SNMP settings.
	spanning-tree	config	Displays Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) settings.
	ssh		Displays general SSH settings.
		key<rsa1 rsa dsa>	Displays the SSH public and private keys

**Table 73** Command Summary: Enable Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION	
	known-hosts	Displays known SSH hosts information.	
	session	Displays current SSH session(s).	
	system-information	Displays general system information.	
	time	Displays current system time and date.	
	timesync	Displays time server information.	
	trunk	Displays link aggregation information.	
	vlan	Displays the status of all VLANs.	
	<vlan-id>	Displays the status of the specified VLAN.	
	vlanlq	gvrp	Displays GVRP setting.
	port-isolation		Displays port isolation setting.
ssh	<1 2> <[user@]dest-ip>		Connects to an SSH server with the specified SSH version.
traceroute	<ip host-name> [in-band out-of-band vlan <vlan-id>] [ttl <1-255>] [wait <1-60>] [queries <1-10>]		Determines the path a packet takes to a device.
write	memory		Saves the configuration to the configuration file the switch is currently using.
	<index>		Saves the configuration to the specified configuration file on the switch.

### 30.9.3 Configure Mode

The following table lists the commands in Configuration (or Config) mode.

**Table 74** Command Summary: Configure Mode

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
admin-password	<pw-string> <confirm-string>	Changes the administrator password.
bandwidth-control		Enables bandwidth control.
bcp-transparency		Enables Bridge Control Protocol Transparency.



**Table 74** Command Summary: Configure Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
classifier	<pre>&lt;name&gt; &lt;[packet-format &lt;802.3untag 802.3tag  EtherIUntag EtherIItag&gt;] [priority &lt;0-7&gt;] [vlan &lt;vlan-id&gt;] [ethernet-type &lt;ether-num ip ipx  arp rarp  appletalk decnet  sna netbios dlc&gt;] [source-mac &lt;src- mac-addr&gt;] [source-port &lt;port-num&gt;] [destination-mac &lt;dest-mac-addr&gt;] [dscp &lt;0-63&gt; ] [ip-protocol &lt;protocol- num tcp udp icmp e gp ospf rsvp igmp  igp pim ipsec&gt;] [establish-only]] [source-ip &lt;src- ip-addr&gt; [mask- bits &lt;mask- bits&gt;]] [source-socket &lt;socket-num&gt;] [destination-ip &lt;dest-ip-addr&gt; [mask-bits &lt;mask- bits&gt;]] [destination- socket &lt;socket- num&gt;] [inactive]&gt;</pre>	<p>Configures a classifier. A classifier groups traffic into data flows according to specific criteria such as the source address, destination address, source port number, destination port number or incoming port number.</p>
cluster	<vlan-id>	Sets the cluster management VLAN ID.
	member <mac-address> password <password-str>	Sets the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address and password.
	name <cluster name>	Configures a name to identify the cluster manager
	rcommand <mac-address>	Logs into a cluster member switch.
default-management	<in-band out-of-band>	Specifies through which traffic flow the switch is to send packets.
dhcp-relay		Enables DHCP relay.

**Table 74** Command Summary: Configure Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	helper-address <svr_ip> [svr2_ip] [svr3_ip]	Sets the IP addresses of up to 3 DHCP servers.
	information	Allows the switch to add system name to agent information.
	option	Allows the switch to add DHCP relay agent information.
exit		Returns you to User mode.
garp	join <100-65535> leave <msec> leaveall <msec>	Configures GARP time settings.
help		Displays help information.
history		Displays a list of previously command(s) that you have executed.
hostname	<name_string>	Sets the switch's name for identification purposes.  <b>Note:</b> Spaces are allowed in the CLI only when the system name is in "quotation marks".  <b>Note: Eg:</b> <config># hostname "GS-3012 a"
https	cert-regeneration <rsa dsa>	Re-generates a certificate.
	timeout <0-65535>	Sets the HTTPS timeout period.
igmp-filtering		Enables IGMP filtering on the switch.
	profile <name> start-address <ip> end-address <ip>	Sets the range of multicast address(es) in a profile.
igmp-snooping		Enables IGMP snooping.
	8021p-priority <0 - 7>	Select a priority level (0-7) with which the switch replaces the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets (belonging to this multicast VLAN).
	host-timeout <1 - 16711450>	Sets the IGMP host timeout value.
	leave-timeout <1 - 16711450>	Sets the IGMP leave timeout value.
	unknown-multicast-frame <drop flooding>	Sets how to treat traffic from unknown multicast group.
interface	port-channel <port-list>	Enables a port or a list of ports for configuration. See <a href="#">Section 30.9.5 on page 188</a> for more details.

**Table 74** Command Summary: Configure Mode (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
ip	address	<ip> <mask>	Sets the IP address and subnet mask of the out-of-band management port.
	address default-gateway	<ip>	Sets the default gateway's IP address for the out-of-band management port.
	name-server	<ip>	Sets the IP address of a domain name server.
	route	<ip> <mask> <next-hop-ip>	Creates a static route.
		<ip> <mask> <next-hop-ip> [metric <metric>] [name <name>] [inactive]	Sets the metric of a static route or deactivates a static route.
lacp			Enables Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).
	system-priority	<1-65535>	Sets the priority of an active port using LACP.
loginPrecedence	<LocalOnly   LocalRADIUS   RADIUSOnly>		Select which database the switch should use (first) to authenticate a user.
logins	username <name> password <pwd>		Configures up to four read-only login accounts.
	username <name> privilege <0-14>		<p>Sets the access privilege for the existing login accounts. The higher the value, the more commands are allowed.</p> <p>All commands are categorized into three groups:</p> <p><b>Unprivileged:</b> enable, exit, help, history, logout, ping, show, ssh, traceroute</p> <p><b>Login-setting:</b> admin-password, login-Precedence, logins, multi-login, password, no logins, no multi-login</p> <p><b>Config:</b> includes all commands except the unprivileged and login-setting commands</p> <p>A user with a privilege of 0 to 12 can only use the unprivileged commands.</p> <p>A user with a privilege of 13 can use the unprivileged or config commands.</p> <p>A user with a privilege of 14 can use all commands.</p>
logout			Exits the CLI.
mac-aging-time	<10-3000>		Sets learned MAC aging time.
mac-filter	name <name> mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> drop <src/dst/both>		Configures a static MAC address port filtering rule.

**Table 74** Command Summary: Configure Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	name <name> mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> drop <src/dst/both> inactive	Disables a static MAC address port filtering rule.
mac-forward	name <name> mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> interface <interface-id>	Configures a static MAC address forwarding rule.
	name <name> mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> interface <interface-id> inactive	Disables a static MAC address forwarding rule.
mirror-port		Enables port mirroring.
	<port-num>	Sets a monitor port (the port to which traffic is copied for analysis).
mode	zynos	Changes the CLI mode to the ZyNOS format.
multi-login		Enables multi-login.
mvr <vlan-id>		Enters the MVR (Multicast VLAN Registration) configuration mode. See <a href="#">Section 30.9.6 on page 191</a> or more information.
no		
	bandwidth-control	Disables bandwidth control.
	bcp-transparency	Disables bridging control protocols such as STP.
	classifier	<name>
		Disables the classifier. Each classifier has one rule. If you disable a classifier you cannot use policy rule related information.
		<name> inactive
	cluster	Enables a classifier.
		Disables cluster management on the switch.
		member <mac-address>
		Removes the cluster member.
	dhcp-relay	Disables DHCP relay.
		information
		System name is not appended to option 82 information field.
		option
		Disables the relay agent information option 82.
	https	timeout
		Resets the session timeout to the default of 300 seconds.
	igmp-filtering	
		Clears the IGMP filtering settings on the switch.

**Table 74** Command Summary: Configure Mode (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
		profile <name>	Deletes the IGMP filtering profile.
		profile <name> start-address <ip> end-address <ip>	Deletes a rule in the IGMP filtering profile.
	igmp-snooping		Disables IGMP snooping.
		8021p-priority	Disables changing the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets.
	ip		Sets the management IP address to the default value.
		route <ip> <mask> inactive	Enables a specified IP static route.
		route <ip> <mask>	Removes a specified IP static route.
	lacp		Disables the link aggregation control protocol (dynamic trunking) on the switch.
	logins	username <name>	Removes the login account.
	mac-filter	mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> inactive	Enables the specified MAC-filter rule.
		mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id>	Disables the specified MAC filter rule.
	mac-forward	mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> interface <interface-id> inactive	Enables the specified MAC address, belonging to a VLAN group (if any) forwarded through an interface(s).
		mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> interface <interface-id>	Removes the specified MAC forwarding entry, belonging to a VLAN group (if any) forwarded through an interface(s).
	mirror-port		Disables port mirroring on the switch.
	multi-login		Disables another administrator from logging into Telnet or the CLI.
	mvr	<vlan-id>	Disables MVR on the switch.
	policy	<name>	Deletes the policy. A policy sets actions for classifier traffic.
		<name> inactive	Enables a policy.
	port-access-authenticator		Disables port authentication on the switch.
		<port-list> reauthenticate	Disables the re-authentication mechanism on the listed port(s).
		<port-list>	Disables authentication on the listed ports.
	port-security		Disables port security on the switch.
		<port-list>	Disables port security on the specified ports.

**Table 74** Command Summary: Configure Mode (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
		<port-list> learn inactive	Enables MAC address learning on the specified ports.
	radius-server		Disables the use of authentication from the RADIUS server.
	remote-management	<index>	Clears a secure client set entry from the list of secure clients.
		<index> service <[telnet][ftp][http][icmp][snmp][ssh][https]>	Disables a secure client set entry number from using the selected remote management service(s).
	service-control	ftp	Disables FTP access to the switch.
		http	Disables web browser control to the switch.
		https	Disables secure web browser access to the switch.
		icmp	Disables ICMP access to the switch such as pinging and tracerouting.
		snmp	Disables SNMP management.
		ssh	Disables SSH (Secure Shell) server access to the switch.
		telnet	Disables telnet access to the switch.
	snmp-server	trap-destination <ip>	Disables sending of SNMP traps to a station.
	spanning-tree		Disables STP.
		<port-list>	Disables STP on listed ports.
	ssh	key <rsa1 rsa dsa>	Disables the secure shell server encryption key. Your switch supports SSH versions 1 and 2 using RSA and DSA authentication.
		known-hosts	Removes all remote hosts.
		known-hosts <host-ip> <cr>	Removes the specified remote hosts from the list of all known hosts.
		known-hosts <host-ip> [1024 ssh-rsa ssh-dsa]	Removes remote known hosts with the specified public key (1024-bit RSA1, RSA or DSA).
	storm-control		Disables broadcast storm control.
	syslog		Disables syslog.
		type <system, interface, switch, authentication, ip>	Sets the device to not generate a category of logs.
		server <ip>	Disables a syslog server entry.
		server <ip> inactive	Enables a syslog server entry.

**Table 74** Command Summary: Configure Mode (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
	timesync		Disables the time setting on the timeserver.
	trunk	<T1 T2 T3 T4 T5 T6> lacp	Disables LACP in the specified trunk group.
		<T1 T2 T3 T4 T5 T6> interface <port-list>	Removes ports from the specified trunk group.
		<T1 T2 T3 T4 T5 T6> <cr>	Disables the specified trunk group.
	vlan	<vlan-id>	Deletes the static VLAN entry.
	vlanlq	gvrp	Disables GVRP on the switch.
		port-isolation	Disables port isolation.
password			Change the password for Enable mode.

**Table 74** Command Summary: Configure Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
policy	<pre> &lt;name&gt; classifier &lt;classifier-list&gt; &lt; [vlan&lt;vlan-id&gt;] [egress-port &lt;port-num&gt;] [priority &lt;0-7&gt;] [dscp &lt;0-63&gt;] [tos &lt;0-7&gt;] [bandwidth &lt;bandwidth&gt;] [outgoing-packet- format &lt;tagged untagged&gt;] [out-of-profile- dscp &lt;0-63&gt;] [forward-action &lt;drop forward&gt;] [queue-action &lt;prio-set prio- queue prio- replace-tos&gt;] [diffserv-action &lt;diff-set- tos diff-replace- priority  diff- set-dscp&gt;] [outgoing-mirror] [outgoing-eport] [outgoing-non- unicast-eport ] [outgoing-set-vlan ] [metering] [out-of-profile- action &lt;[change- dscp] [drop] [ forward] [set- drop-prec]&gt;] [inactive]&gt; </pre>	Configures a policy. A classifier distinguishes traffic into flows based on the configured criteria. A policy rule ensures that a traffic flow gets the requested treatment in the network.
port-access- authenticator		Enables 802.1x authentication on the switch.
	<port-list>	Enables 802.1x authentication on the specified port(s).
	<port-list> reauthenticate	Sets a subscriber to periodically re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to a specified port.
	<port-list> reauth-period <reauth-period>	Specifies how often a client has to re-enter the username and password to stay connected to the specified port(s).
port-security		Enables port security on the switch.



**Table 74** Command Summary: Configure Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	<port-list>	Enables the port security feature on the specified port(s).
	<port-list> learn inactive	Disables MAC address learning on the specified port(s).
	<port-list> address-limit <number>	Limits the number of (dynamic) MAC addresses that may be learned on a port.
	<port-list> MAC- freeze	Disables MAC address learning and enables port security.  <b>Note:</b> All previously learned dynamic MAC addresses are saved to the static MAC address table.
queue	level <0-7> priority <0-7>	Sets the priority level-to-physical queue mapping.
radius-server	host <ip> [acct- port <socket- number>] [key <key- string>]	Sets the IP address of the external RADIUS server, UDP port and shared key.
remote- management	<index>	Enables a specified secured client set.
	<index> start-addr <ip> end-addr <ip> service <[telnet] [ftp][http][icmp] [snmp][ssh][https] >	Specifies a group of trusted computer(s) from which an administrator may use a service to manage the switch.
service- control	ftp <socket- number>	Allows FTP access on the specified service port.
	http <socket- number> <timeout>	Allows HTTP access on the specified service port and defines the timeout period.
	https <socket- number>	Allows HTTPS access on the specified service port.
	icmp	Allows ICMP access to the switch such as pinging and tracerouting.
	snmp	Allows SNMP management.
	ssh <socket- number>	Allows SSH access on the specified service port.
	telnet <socket- number>	Allows Telnet access on the specified service port.
snmp-server	[contact <system contact>] [location <system location>]	Sets the geographic location and the name of the person in charge of this switch.
	get-community <property>	Sets the get community.

**Table 74** Command Summary: Configure Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION	
	set-community <property>	Sets the set community.	
	trap-community <property>	Sets the trap community.	
	trap-destination <ip>	Sets the IP addresses of up to four stations to send your SNMP traps to.	
spanning-tree		Enables STP on the switch.	
	<port-list>	Enables STP on a specified port.	
	<port-list> priority <0-255>	Sets the priority for a specified port.	
	<port-list> path- cost <1-65535>	Sets the STP path cost for a specified port.	
	hello-time <1-10> maximum-age <6-40> forward-delay <4- 30>	Sets Hello Time, Maximum Age and Forward Delay.	
	priority <0-61440>	Sets the bridge priority of the switch.	
ssh	known-hosts <host- ip> <1024 ssh- rsa ssh-dsa> <key>	Adds a remote host to which the switch can access using SSH service.	
storm-control		Enables broadcast storm control on the switch.	
syslog	<cr>	Enables syslog.	
	server <ip>	inactive	Disables a syslog server entry.
		level <0-7>	Sets which severity level(s) of logs are sent to this syslog server. A lower number is more critical.
	type <system, interface, switch, authentication, ip>		Sets the device to generate a category of logs.
	type <system, interface, switch, authentication, ip>	facility <0-7>	Sets the facility (file) on the syslog server to which the switch sends a category of logs.
time	<Hour:Min:Sec>		Sets the time in hour, minute and second format.
	date <month/day/ year>		Sets the date in year, month and day format.
	timezone <- 1200 ... 1200>		Selects the time difference between UTC (formerly known as GMT) and your time zone.
timesync	<daytime time ntp>		Sets the time server protocol.
	server <ip>		Sets the IP address of your time server.
trunk	<T1 T2 T3 T4 T5 T6 >		Activates a trunk group.

**Table 74** Command Summary: Configure Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	<T1 T2 T3 T4 T5 T6 >interface <port-list>	Adds a port(s) to the specified trunk group.
	<T1 T2 T3 T4 T5 T6 >lacp	Enables LACP for a trunk group.
	interface <port-list> timeout <lacp-timeout>	Defines the port number and LACP timeout period.
vlan <1-4094>		Enters the VLAN configuration mode. See <a href="#">Section 30.9.4 on page 187</a> for more information.
vlan-type	<802.1q port-based>	Specifies the VLAN type.
vlanlq	gvrp	Allows VLAN groups beyond the local switch.
	port-isolation	Enables port isolation.

### 30.9.4 config-vlan Commands

The following table lists the config-vlan commands in configuration mode.

**Table 75** Command Summary: config-vlan Commands

vlan <1-4094>			Creates a new VLAN group.
	exit		Leaves config-vlan mode.
	fixed <port-list>		Specifies the port(s) to be a permanent member of this VLAN group.
	forbidden <port-list>		Specifies the port(s) you want to prohibit from joining this VLAN group.
	help		Displays a list of available VLAN commands.
	inactive		Disables the specified VLAN.
	ip address		
		<ip-address> <mask>	Sets the IP address and subnet mask of the switch in the specified VLAN for packet loopback test.
		<ip-address> <mask> manageable	Allows the switch to be managed using this specified IP address.
		default-gateway <ip-address>	Sets a default gateway IP address for this VLAN.
		inband-default <ip-address> <mask>	Sets a static in-band IP address and subnet mask.
		inband-default dhcp-bootp	Sets the dynamic in-band IP address.

**Table 75** Command Summary: config-vlan Commands

		inband-default dhcp-bootp release	Releases the dynamic in-band IP address.
		inband-default dhcp-bootp renew	Updates the dynamic in-band IP address.
	name <name-str>		Specifies a name for identification purposes.
	no	fixed <port- list>	Sets fixed port(s) to normal port(s).
		forbidden <port-list>	Sets forbidden port(s) to normal port(s).
		inactive	Enables the specified VLAN.
		ip address <ip- address> <mask>	Deletes the IP address and subnet mask from this VLAN.
		ip address default-gateway	Deletes the default gateway from this VLAN.
		ip address inband-default dhcp-bootp	Sets the default in-band interface to use a static IP address in this VLAN. The switch will use the default IP address of 0.0.0.0 if you do not configure a static IP address.
		untagged <port- list>	Specifies the port(s) you want to tag all outgoing frames transmitted with this VLAN Group ID.
	normal <port- list>		Specifies the port(s) to dynamically join this VLAN group using GVRP
	untagged <port- list>		Specifies the port(s) you don't want to tag all outgoing frames transmitted with this VLAN Group ID.

### 30.9.5 interface Commands

The following commands are listed in configuration mode as “interface” switch commands; all are preceded with the command `interface`.

**Table 76** Command Summary: Interface

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
interface port- channel <port- list>		Enables a port or a list of ports for configuration.
	bandwidth-limit	Enables bandwidth limit on the switch.
	cir <Kbps>	Sets the guaranteed bandwidth allowed for incoming traffic on the port(s).
	egress <Kbps>	Sets the maximum bandwidth allowed for outgoing traffic on the port(s).

**Table 76** Command Summary: Interface (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	<code>ingress &lt;Kbps&gt;</code>	Sets the maximum bandwidth allowed for incoming traffic on the port(s).
	<code>pir &lt;Kbps&gt;</code>	Sets the maximum bandwidth allowed for incoming traffic on the port(s).
	<code>broadcast-limit</code>	Enables broadcast storm control limit on the switch.
	<code>&lt;pkt/s&gt;</code>	Sets how many broadcast packets the interface receives per second.
	<code>bpdu-control</code>	<code>&lt;peer tunnel discard network&gt;</code> Sets how Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) are used in STP port states.
	<code>cable_diagnostics</code>	Displays whether a cable is connected to the port ( <b>good</b> ) or not ( <b>open</b> ).
	<code>dlf-limit</code>	Enables the Destination Lookup Failure (DLF) limit.
	<code>&lt;pkt/s&gt;</code>	Sets the interface DLF limit in packets per second (pps).
	<code>egress set</code>	<code>&lt;port-list&gt;</code> Sets the outgoing traffic port list for a port-based VLAN.
	<code>exit</code>	Exits from the interface configuration command set.
	<code>flow-control</code>	Enables interface flow control. Flow control regulates transmissions to match the bandwidth of the receiving port.
	<code>frame-type</code>	<code>&lt;all tagged&gt;</code> Choose to accept both tagged and untagged incoming frames or just tagged incoming frames on a port.
	<code>gvrp</code>	Enables this function to permit VLAN groups beyond the local switch.
	<code>help</code>	Displays a description of the interface commands.
	<code>igmp-filtering profile &lt;name&gt;</code>	Sets the IGMP filtering profile for this port.
	<code>igmp-group-limited</code>	Limits the number of multicast groups.
	<code>igmp-group-limited number &lt;number&gt;</code>	Sets the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join.
	<code>igmp-immediate-leave</code>	Enables IGMP immediate leave on the port.
	<code>igmp-querier-mode &lt;auto fixed edge&gt;</code>	Sets the IGMP querier mode of a port. <code>auto</code> dynamically use the port as an IGMP query port after it receives IGMP query packets. <code>fixed</code> always use the port as an IGMP query port. <code>edge</code> stops the switch from using the port as an IGMP query port.
	<code>inactive</code>	Disables the specified interface on the switch

**Table 76** Command Summary: Interface (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	<code>ingress-check</code>	Enables the device to discard incoming frames for VLANs that are not included in a port member set.
	<code>intrusion-lock</code>	Enables intrusion lock on a port and a port cannot be connected again after you disconnected the cable.
	<code>mirror</code>	Enables port mirroring in the interface.
	<code>dir &lt;ingress egress both&gt;</code>	Enables port mirroring for incoming, outgoing or both incoming and outgoing traffic. Port mirroring copies traffic from one or all ports to another or all ports for external analysis.
	<code>multicast-limit</code>	Enables the interface multicast limit.
	<code>&lt;pkt/s&gt;</code>	Sets how many multicast packets the interface receives per second.
	<code>name</code>	<code>&lt;port-name-string&gt;</code> Sets a name for your interface. Enter a descriptive name (up to nine printable ASCII characters).
	<code>no</code>	
	<code>bandwidth-limit</code>	Disables bandwidth limit on the port(s).
	<code>broadcast-limit</code>	Disables broadcast storm control limit on the port(s).
	<code>dlf-limit</code>	Disables destination lookup failure (DLF) on the port(s).
	<code>egress set &lt;port-list&gt;</code>	Disables the outgoing traffic port list for a port-based VLAN.
	<code>flow-control</code>	Disables flow control on the port(s).
	<code>gvrp</code>	Disables GVRP on the port(s).
	<code>igmp-filtering profile</code>	Disables IGMP filtering on the port.
	<code>igmp-group-limited</code>	Disables IGMP group limitation.
	<code>igmp-immediate-leave</code>	Disables IGMP immediate leave on the port.
	<code>inactive</code>	Enables the specified interface on the switch.
	<code>ingress-check</code>	Incoming traffic on the port(s) is not checked for VLAN tags.
	<code>intrusion-lock</code>	Disables intrusion-lock on a port so that a port can be connected again after you disconnected the cable.
	<code>mirror</code>	Disables port mirroring on the port(s).
	<code>multicast-limit</code>	Disables multicast limit on the port(s).
	<code>vlan-trunking</code>	Disables VLAN trunking on the port(s).

**Table 76** Command Summary: Interface (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
	pvid	<1-4094>	The default PVID is VLAN 1 for all ports. Sets a PVID in the range 1 to 4094 for the specified interface.
	qos priority	<0 .. 7>	Sets the quality of service priority for an interface.
	speed-duplex	<auto 10-half 10-full 100-half 100-full 1000-full>	Sets the duplex mode (half, full) and speed (10/100/1000 Mbps) of the connection on the interface. Selecting auto (auto-negotiation) makes one port able to negotiate with a peer automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support.
	spq		Sets the interface to use Strict Priority Queuing.
	test		Performs an interface loopback test.
	vlan-trunking		Enables VLAN Trunking on ports connected to other switches or routers (but not ports directly connected to end users) to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through the switch.
	wrr		Sets the interface to use Weighted Round Robin queuing (WRR).
		wt1> <wt2> ... <wt8>	Sets the WRR weight. A weight value of one to eight is given to each variable from wt1 to wt8.

### 30.9.6 mvr Commands

The following table lists the mvr commands in configuration mode.

**Table 77** Command Summary: mvr Commands

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
mvr <1-4094>			Enters the MVR (Multicast VLAN Registration) configuration mode.
	8021p-priority <0 - 7>		Select a priority level (0-7) with which the switch replaces the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets (belonging to this multicast VLAN).
	exit		Exit from the MVR configuration mode.
	group <name-str> start-address <ip> end-address <ip>		Sets the multicast group range for the MVR.
	inactive		Disables MVR settings.
	mode <dynamic compatible>		Sets the MVR mode (dynamic or compatible).

**Table 77** Command Summary: mvr Commands (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	name <name-str>	Sets the MVR name for identification purposes.
	no group	Disables all MVR group settings.
	no group <name-str>	Disables the specified MVR group setting.
	no inactive	Enables MVR.
	no receiver-port <port-list>	Disables the receiver port(s). An MVR receiver port can only receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN.
	no source-port <port-list>	Disables the source port(s). An MVR source port can send and receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN.
	no tagged <port-list>	Sets the port(s) to untag VLAN tags.
	receiver-port <port-list>	Sets the receiver port(s). An MVR receiver port can only receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN.
	source-port <port-list>	Sets the source port(s). An MVR source port can send and receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN.
	tagged <port-list>	Sets the port(s) to tag VLAN tags.



# CHAPTER 31

## Command Examples

This chapter describes some commands in more detail.

### 31.1 Overview

These are commands that you may use frequently in maintaining your switch.

### 31.2 show Commands

These are the commonly used `show` commands.

#### 31.2.1 show system-information

Syntax:

```
show system-information
```

This command shows the general system information (such as the firmware version and system up time).

An example is shown next.

**Figure 116** show system-information Command Example

```
ras> show system-information

System Name           : GS-3012
System Contact        :
System Location       :
Ethernet Address      : 00:13:49:12:a4:de
ZyNOS F/W Version     : V3.60 (ABM.4)b1 | 02/27/2006
RomRasSize            : 3036720
System up Time        :      3:00:08 (107e37 ticks)
Bootbase Version      : V3.00 | 01/14/2005
ZyNOS CODE            : RAS Feb 27 2006 16:21:00
Product Model        : GS-3012
```

## 31.2.2 show hardware-monitor

Syntax:

```
show hardware-monitor [c|f]
```

This command displays the current hardware status (such as temperature and voltage levels).

**Figure 117** how hardware-monitor Command Example

```

ras> show hardware-monitor c

Temperature Unit : (c)
Temperature(%c)  Current      Max      Min  Threshold  Status
-----
                MAC         33.0    34.0    22.0      65.0  Normal
                CPU         32.0    32.5    22.0      65.0  Normal
                PHY         32.0    32.0    22.5      65.0  Normal

FAN Speed(RPM)  Current      Max      Min  Threshold  Status
-----
                FAN1        5493    5536    5247      4500  Normal
                FAN2        5536    5716    5367      4500  Normal
                FAN3        5716    5763    5170      4500  Normal

Voltage(V)      Current      Max      Min  Threshold  Status
-----
                2.5         2.560    2.560    2.544      +-8%  Normal
                1.25        1.216    1.232    1.216      +-11% Normal
                3.3         3.296    3.296    3.296      +-7%  Normal
                12         11.795   11.795   11.795     +-11% Normal
                5          4.972    4.972    4.972      +-7%  Normal
                1.3        1.280    1.296    1.280      +-10% Normal
                1.25        1.216    1.216    1.216      +-8%  Normal
                BPS_12VIN    --        --        --          --    Absent
ras>

```

## 31.2.3 show ip

Syntax:

```
show ip
```

This command displays the IP related information (such as IP address and subnet mask) on all switch interfaces.

**Figure 118** show ip Command Example

```
ras> show ip
Out-of-band Management IP Address = 192.168.0.1
Management IP Address
  IP[192.168.0.1], Netmask[255.255.255.0], VID[0]
IP Interface
  IP[192.168.1.1], Netmask[255.255.255.0], VID[1]
ras>
```

### 31.2.4 show logging

**Note:** This command is not available in User mode.

Syntax:

```
show logging
```

This command displays the system logs. The following figure shows an example.

**Figure 119** show logging Command Example

```
ras# show logging
 57 Thu Jan  1 00:00:05 1970 PINI  INFO  main: init completed
 58 Thu Jan  1 00:00:02 1970 PP0c -WARN  SNMP TRAP 3: link up
 59 Thu Jan  1 00:00:05 1970 PINI -WARN  SNMP TRAP 0: cold start
 60 Thu Jan  1 00:00:05 1970 PINI -WARN  SNMP TRAP 3: link up
 61 Thu Jan  1 00:00:05 1970 PINI  INFO  main: init completed
 62 Thu Jan  1 00:00:10 1970 PP24  INFO  adjtime task pause 1 day
 63 Thu Jan  1 00:14:36 1970 PP0c -WARN  SNMP TRAP 2: link down
Clear Error Log (y/n):
```

**Note:** If you clear a log (by entering *y* at the “Clear Error Log (y/n):” prompt), you cannot view it again.

### 31.2.5 show interface

Syntax:

```
show interface [port-number]
```

This command displays statistics of a port. The following example shows that port 10 is up and the related information.

**Figure 120** show interface Command Example

```

ras# show interface 10
  Port Info      Port NO.           :10
                 Link              :100M/F
                 Statuss           :FORWARDING
                 LACP              :Disabled
                 TxPkts            :69
                 RxPkts            :4
                 Errors             :0
                 Tx KBs/s           :1.684
                 Rx KBs/s           :1.684
                 Up Time            : 0:02:12
TX Packet      Tx Packets          :69
                Multicast           :0
                Broadcast           :0
                Pause               :0
                Tagged              :0
RX Packet      Rx Packets          :4
                Multicast           :0
                Broadcast           :4
                Pause               :0
                Control             :0
TX Collison    Single              :0
                Multiple            :0
                Excessive           :0
                Late                :0
Error Packet   RX CRC              :0
                Length             :0
                Runt               :0
Distribution   64                  :4
                65 to 127          :74
                128 to 255        :18
                256 to 511        :0
                512 to 1023       :0
                1024 to 1518     :44
                Giant              :0
ras#

```

### 31.2.6 show mac address-table

Syntax:

```
show mac address-table <all <sort>|static>
```

where

<sort> = Specifies the sorting criteria (MAC, VID or port).

This command displays the MAC address(es) stored in the switch. The following example shows a static MAC address table.

**Figure 121** show mac address-table Command Example

```

ras# show mac address-table static
Port      VLAN ID      MAC Address      Type
CPU       1            00:a0:c5:01:23:46  Static
ras#

```

### 31.3 ping

Syntax:

```
ping <ip> < [in-band|out-of-band|vlan <vlan-id> ] [ size <0-8024> ] [ -t ]>
```

where

<ip> = The IP address of an Ethernet device.

[in-band|out-of-band|vlan <vlan-id> ] = Specifies the network interface or the VLAN ID to which the Ethernet device belongs.

out-of-band refers the management port while in-band means the other ports on the switch.

[ size <0-8024> ] = Specifies the packet size to send.

[ -t ] = Sends Ping packets to the Ethernet device indefinitely. Click [CTRL]+ C to terminate the Ping process.

This command sends Ping packets to an Ethernet device. The following example sends Ping requests to and displays the replies from an Ethernet device with an IP address of 192.168.1.100.

**Figure 122** ping Command Example

```

ras# ping 192.168.1.100
sent  rcvd  rate    rtt     avg     mdev    max     min  reply from
  1     1    100      0       0       0       0       0    192.168.1.100
  2     2    100      0       0       0       0       0    192.168.1.100
  3     3    100      0       0       0       0       0    192.168.1.100
ras#

```

## 31.4 traceroute

Syntax:

```
traceroute <ip> [in-band|out-of-band|vlan <vlan-id>] [ttl <1-255>] [wait <1-60>] [queries <1-10>]
```

where

<ip>	=	The IP address of an Ethernet device.
[in-band out-of-band vlan <vlan-id> ]	=	Specifies the network interface or the VLAN ID to which the Ethernet device belongs.
[ttl <1-255>]	=	Specifies the Time To Live (TTL) period.
[wait <1-60>]	=	Specifies the time period to wait.
[queries <1-10>]	=	Specifies how many tries the switch performs the traceroute function.

This command displays information about the route to an Ethernet device. The following example displays route information to an Ethernet device with an IP address of 192.168.1.100.

**Figure 123** traceroute Command Example

```

ras> traceroute 192.168.1.100
traceroute to 192.168.1.100, 30 hops max, 40 byte packet
 1:192.168.1.100 (10 ms) (10 ms) (0 ms)
traceroute done:

```

## 31.5 Enabling RSTP

To enable RSTP on a port, enter “spanning-tree” followed by the port number. You also need to use “spanning-tree” to enable RSTP on the switch. The following example enables RSTP on port 10.

**Figure 124** Enable RSTP Command Example

```

ras(config)# spanning-tree 10
ras(config)# spanning-tree

```

## 31.6 Configuration File Maintenance

This section shows you how to backup or restore the configuration file on the switch using TFTP.

## 31.6.1 Backing up Configuration

Syntax:

```
copy running-config tftp <ip> <remote-file>
```

where

- <ip> = The IP address of a TFTP server on which you want to store the backup configuration file.
- <remote-file> = Specifies the name of the configuration file.

This command backs up the current configuration file on a TFTP server. The following example backs up the current configuration to a file (`test.cfg`) on the TFTP server (172.23.19.96).

**Figure 125** CLI: Backup Configuration Example

```
ras# copy running-config tftp 172.23.19.96 test.cfg
Backupping
. (599)Bytes Done!
ras#
```

## 31.6.2 Restoring Configuration

Syntax:

```
copy tftp config <index> <ip> <remote-file>
```

where

- <index> = Specifies to restore which configuration file (1 or 2) on the switch.
- <ip> = The IP address of a TFTP server from which you want to get the backup configuration file.
- <remote-file> = Specified the name of the configuration file.

This command restores a configuration file on the switch. The following example uploads the configuration file (`test.cfg`) from the TFTP server (172.23.19.96) to the switch.

**Figure 126** CLI: Restore Configuration Example

```
ras# copy tftp config 1 172.23.19.96 test.cfg
Restoring
. (599)Bytes Done!
ras#
```

### 31.6.3 Using a Different Configuration File

You can store up to two configuration files on the switch. Only one configuration file is used at a time. By default the switch uses the first configuration file (with an index number of 1). You can set the switch to use a different configuration file. There are two ways in which you can set the switch to use a different configuration file: restart the switch (cold reboot) and restart the system (warm reboot).

Use the `boot config` command to restart the switch and use a different configuration file (if specified). The following example reboots the switch to use the second configuration file.

**Figure 127** boot config Command Example

```
ras# boot config 2
```

Use the `reload config` command to restart the system and use a different configuration file (if specified). The following example restarts the system to use the second configuration file.

**Figure 128** CLI: reload config Command Example

```
ras# reload config 2
```

**Note:** When you use the `write memory` command without specifying a configuration file index number, the switch saves the changes to the configuration file the switch is currently using.

### 31.6.4 Resetting to the Factory Default

Follow the steps below to reset the switch back to the factory defaults.

- 1 Enter “erase running config” to reset the current running configuration.
- 2 Enter “write memory” to save the changes to the current configuration file. If you want to reset the second configuration file, use the write memory command again with the specified index number.

The following example resets both configuration files to the factory default settings.



**Figure 129** CLI: Reset to the Factory Default Example

```
ras# erase running-config
ras# write memory
ras# write memory 2
```

## 31.7 Example no Commands

These are the commonly used command examples that belong to the “no” group of commands.

### 31.7.1 no mirror-port

Syntax:

```
no mirror-port
```

Disables port mirroring on the switch. An example is shown next.

**Figure 130** no mirror-port Command Example

```
ras(config)# no mirror-port
```

### 31.7.2 no https timeout

Syntax:

```
no https timeout
```

Resets the https session timeout to default. An example is shown next. The session timeout is reset to 300 seconds.

**Figure 131** no https timeout Command Example

```
ras(config)# no https timeout
Cache timeout 300
```

### 31.7.3 no trunk

Syntax:

```
no trunk <T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T6>
no trunk <T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T6> lacp
no trunk <T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T6> interface <port-list>
```

where

<T1 T2 T3 T4 T5 T6>	Disables the trunk group.
<T1 T2 T3 T4 T5 T6> lacp	Disables LACP in the trunk group.
<T1 T2 T3 T4 T5 T6> interface <port-list>	Removes ports from the trunk group.

An example is shown next.

- Disable trunk one (T1).
- Disable LACP on trunk three (T3).
- Remove ports one, three, four and five from trunk five (T5).

**Figure 132** no trunk Command Example

```
ras(config)# no trunk T1
ras(config)# no trunk T3 lacp
ras(config)# no trunk T5 interface 1,3-5
```

### 31.7.4 no port-access-authenticator

Syntax:

```
no port-access-authenticator
no port-access-authenticator <port-list> reauthenticate
no port-access-authenticator <port-list>
```

where

	Disables port authentication on the switch.
<port-list> reauthenticate	Disables the re-authentication mechanism on the listed port(s).
<port-list>	Disables authentication on the listed ports.

An example is shown next.

- Disable authentication on the switch.
- Disable re-authentication on ports one, three, four and five.
- Disable authentication on ports one, six and seven.

**Figure 133** no port-access-authenticator Command Example

```
ras(config)# no port-access-authenticator
ras(config)# no port-access-authenticator 1,3-5 reauthenticate
ras(config)# no port-access-authenticator 1,6-7
```

## 31.7.5 no ssh

Syntax:

```
no ssh key <rsa1|rsa|dsa>
no ssh known-hosts <host-ip> <cr>
no ssh known-hosts <host-ip> [1024|ssh-rsa|ssh-dsa]
```

where

key <rsa1 rsa dsa>	Disables the secure shell server encryption key. Your switch supports SSH versions 1 and 2 using RSA and DSA authentication.
known-hosts <host-ip>	Remove specific remote hosts from the list of all known hosts.
known-hosts <host-ip> [1024 ssh- rsa ssh-dsa]	Remove remote known hosts with a specified public key (1024-bit RSA1, RSA or DSA).

An example is shown next.

- Disable the secure shell RSA1 encryption key.
- Remove the remote host with IP address 172.165.1.8 from the list of known hosts.
- Remove the remote host with IP address 172.165.1.9 and with an SSH-RSA encryption key from the list of known hosts.

**Figure 134** no ssh Command Example

```
ras(config)# no ssh key rsa1
ras(config)# no ssh known-hosts 172.165.1.8
ras(config)# no ssh known-hosts 172.165.1.9 ssh-rsa
```

## 31.8 interface Commands

These are some commonly used commands that belong to the interface group of commands.

## 31.8.1 interface

Syntax:

```
interface
```

Each interface refers to an Ethernet port on the switch. Commands configured after the interface command correspond to those ports. Type multiple ports or port ranges separated by a comma. Ranges of port numbers are typed separated by a dash.

An example is shown next.

- Enter the configuration command set.
- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Begin configuring for those ports.

**Figure 135** interface Command Example

```

ras# config
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
ras(config-interface)#

```

## 31.8.2 bpd-control

Syntax:

```
bpd-control <peer|tunnel|discard|network>
```

where

<code>&lt;peer tunnel discard network&gt;=</code>	Type <code>peer</code> to process any BPDUs received on these ports.
	Type <code>tunnel</code> to forward BPDUs received on these ports.
	Type <code>discard</code> to drop any BPDUs received on these ports.
	Type <code>network</code> to process a BPDU with no VLAN tag and forward a tagged BPDU.

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Set the BPDU control to tunnel, to forward BPDUs received on ports one, three, four and five.

**Figure 136** interface bpdu-control Command Example

```
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
ras(config-interface)# bpdu-control tunnel
ras(config-interface)#
```

### 31.8.3 broadcast-limit

Syntax:

```
broadcast-limit
broadcast-limit <pkt/s>
```

where

	Enables broadcast storm control limit on the switch.
<pkt/s>	Sets how many broadcast packets the interface receives per second.

An example is shown next.

- Enable port one for configuration.
- Enable broadcast control.
- Set the number of broadband packets the interface receives per second

**Figure 137** broadcast-limit Command Example

```
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1
ras(config-interface)# broadcast-limit
ras(config-interface)# broadcast-limit 21
```

### 31.8.4 bandwidth-limit

Syntax:

```
bandwidth-limit
bandwidth-limit pir <Kbps>
bandwidth-limit cir <Kbps>
bandwidth-limit egress <Kbps>
```

where

	Enables bandwidth control on the switch.
<Kbps>	Sets the maximum bandwidth allowed for outgoing traffic (egress) or incoming traffic (ingress) on the switch.

An example is shown next.

- Enable port one for configuration.

- Enable bandwidth control.
- Set the outgoing traffic bandwidth limit to 5000Kbps.
- Set the guaranteed bandwidth allowed for incoming traffic to 4000Kbps.
- Set the maximum bandwidth allowed for incoming traffic to 8000Kbps.

**Figure 138** bandwidth-limit Command Example

```

ras(config)# interface port-channel 1
ras(config-interface)# bandwidth-limit
ras(config-interface)# bandwidth-limit egress 5000
ras(config-interface)# bandwidth-limit cir 4000
ras(config-interface)# bandwidth-limit pir 8000

```

### 31.8.5 mirror

Syntax:

```

mirror
mirror dir <ingress|egress|both>

```

where

	Enables port mirroring on the interface.
<ingress egress both>	Enables port mirroring for incoming, outgoing or both incoming and outgoing traffic.

Port mirroring copies traffic from one or all ports to another or all ports for external analysis. An example is shown next.

- Enable port mirroring.
- Enable the monitor port three.
- Enable ports one, four, five and six for configuration.
- Enable port mirroring on the interface.
- Enable port mirroring for outgoing traffic. Traffic is copied from ports one, four, five and six to port three in order to examine it in more detail without interfering with the traffic flow on the original port(s).

**Figure 139** mirror Command Example

```

ras(config)# mirror-port
ras(config)# mirror-port 3
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1,4-6
ras(config-interface)# mirror
ras(config-interface)# mirror dir egress

```

## 31.8.6 gvrp

Syntax:

```
gvrp
```

GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Enable this function to permit VLANs groups beyond the local switch.

An example is shown next.

- Enable the IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN command to configure tagged VLAN for the switch.
- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Enable GVRP on the interface.

**Figure 140** gvrp Command Example

```
ras(config)# vlan1q gvrp
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
ras(config-interface)# gvrp
```

## 31.8.7 ingress-check

Syntax:

```
ingress-check
```

Enables the device to discard incoming frames for VLANs that are not included in a port member set.

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Enable ingress checking on the interface.

**Figure 141** ingress-check Command Example

```
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
ras(config-interface)# ingress-check
```

## 31.8.8 frame-type

Syntax:

```
frame-type <all|tagged>
```

where

<all|tagged> Choose to accept both tagged and untagged incoming frames or just tagged incoming frames on a port.

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Enable ingress checking on the interface.
- Enable tagged frame-types on the interface.

**Figure 142** frame-type Command Example

```
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
ras(config-interface)# ingress-check
ras(config-interface)# frame-type tagged
```

## 31.8.9 vlan-trunking

Syntax:

```
vlan-trunking
```

Enable VLAN Trunking on ports connected to other switches or routers (but not ports directly connected to end users) to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through the switch.

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Enable VLAN Trunking on the interface.

**Figure 143** vlan-trunking Command Example

```
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
ras(config-interface)# vlan-trunking
```



### 31.8.10 weight

Syntax:

```
weight <wt1> <wt2> ... <wt8>
```

where

```
<wt1> <wt2>      Sets the interface WFQ weighting. A weight value of one to  
... <wt8>        eight is given to each variable from wt1 to wt8.
```

An example is shown next.

- Enable port two and ports six to twelve for configuration.
- Set the queue weights from Q0 to Q7.

**Figure 144** weight Command Example

```
ras# configure  
ras(config)# interface port-channel 2,6-12  
ras(config-interface)# weight 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
```

### 31.8.11 egress set

Syntax:

```
egress set <port-list>
```

where

```
<port-list> Sets the outgoing traffic port list for a port-based VLAN.
```

An example is shown next.

- Enable port-based VLAN tagging on the switch.
- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Set the outgoing traffic ports as the CPU (0), seven (7), eight (8) and nine (9).

**Figure 145** egress set Command Example

```
ras(config)# vlan-type port-based  
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5  
ras(config-interface)# egress set 0,7-9
```

## 31.8.12 qos priority

Syntax:

```
qos priority <0 .. 7>
```

where

```
<0 .. 7>    Sets the quality of service priority for an interface(s).
```

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Set the IEEE 802.1p quality of service priority as four (4).

**Figure 146** qos priority Command Example

```
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
ras(config-interface)# qos priority 4
```

## 31.8.13 name

Syntax:

```
name <port-name-string>
```

where

```
<port-name-  Sets a name for your port interface(s).
string>
```

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Set a name for the interfaces.

**Figure 147** name Command Example

```
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
ras(config-interface)# name Test
```

### 31.8.14 speed-duplex

Syntax:

```
speed-duplex <auto|10-half|10-full|100-half|100-full|1000-full>
```

where

<code>&lt;auto 10-half 10-full 100-half 100-full 1000-full&gt;</code>	Sets the duplex mode (half, full) and speed (10/100/1000 Mbps) of the connection on the interface. Selecting auto (auto-negotiation) makes one port able to negotiate with a peer automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support.
---	--

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Set the speed to 10 Mbps in half duplex mode.

**Figure 148** speed-duplex Command Example

```
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
ras(config-interface)# speed-duplex 10-half
```

# CHAPTER 32

## IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN Commands

This chapter describes the IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN and associated commands.

### 32.1 IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN Overview

See the *VLAN* chapter for more information on VLANs. There are two kinds of tagging:

#### 1 Explicit Tagging

A VLAN identifier is added to the frame header that identifies the source VLAN.

#### 2 Implicit Tagging

The MAC (Media Access Control) number, the port or other information is used to identify the source of a VLAN frame.

The IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN uses both explicit and implicit tagging.

Whether to tag an outgoing frame depends on the setting of the egress port on a per-LAN, per-port basis (recall that a port can belong to multiple VLANs). If the tagging on the egress port is enabled for the VID of a frame, then the frame is transmitted as a tagged frame; otherwise, it is transmitted as an untagged frame.

### 32.2 VLAN Databases

A VLAN database stores and organizes VLAN registration information useful for switching frames to and from a switch. A VLAN database consists of a static entries (Static VLAN or SVLAN table) and dynamic entries (Dynamic VLAN or DVLAN table).

#### 32.2.1 Static Entries (SVLAN Table)

Static entry registration information is added, modified and removed by administrators only.

## 32.2.2 Dynamic Entries (DVLAN Table)

Dynamic entries are learned by the switch and cannot be created or updated by administrators. The switch learns this information by observing what port, source address and VLAN ID (or VID) is associated with a frame. Entries are added and deleted using GARP VLAN Registration Protocol (GVRP), where GARP is the Generic Attribute Registration Protocol.

## 32.3 Configuring Tagged VLAN

The following procedure shows you how to configure tagged VLAN.

- 1 Use the IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN commands to configure tagged VLAN for the switch.
- 2 Use the `vlan <vlan-id>` command to configure or create a VLAN on the switch. The switch automatically enters the config-vlan mode.
- 3 Use the `exit` command when you are finished configuring the VLAN.
- 4 Use the `interface <port-list>` command to enter the config-interface mode to set the VLAN settings on a port, then use the `pvid <vlan-id>` command to set the VLAN ID you created for the port-list to that specific port in the PVID table.
- 5 Use the `inactive` command to deactivate the VLAN(s).

Example:

**Figure 149** Tagged VLAN Configuration and Activation Example

```
ras(config)# vlan 2000
ras(config-vlan)# name upl
ras(config-vlan)# fixed 10-12
ras(config-vlan)# no untagged 10-12
ras(config-vlan)# exit
ras(config)# interface port-channel 10-12
ras(config-interface)# pvid 2000
ras(config-interface)# exit
ras(config)#
```

- 6 Configure your management VLAN.
  - Use the `vlan <vlan-id>` command to create a VLAN (VID 3 in this example) for managing the switch, and the switch will activate the new management VLAN.
  - Use the `inactive` command to disable the new management VLAN.

Example:

**Figure 150** CPU VLAN Configuration and Activation Example

```

ras(config)# vlan 3
ras(config-vlan)# inactive
ras(config-vlan)#

```

## 32.4 Global VLAN1Q Tagged VLAN Configuration Commands

This section shows you how to configure and monitor the IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN.

### 32.4.1 GARP Status

Syntax:

```
show garp
```

This command shows the switch's GARP timer settings, including the join, leave and leave all timers.

An example is shown next.

**Figure 151** garp status Command Example

```

ras# show garp

GARP Timer
-----
Join   Timer      :200
Leave   Timer      :600
Leave All Timer    :10000
ras#

```

### 32.4.2 GARP Timer

Syntax:

```
garp join <msec> leave <msec> leaveall <msec>
```

where

```
join <msec>
=
```

This sets the duration of the Join Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a Join Period timer. The allowed Join Time range is between 100 and 32767 milliseconds; the default is 200 milliseconds.

<code>leave &lt;msec&gt;</code> =	This sets the duration of the Leave Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave Period timer. Leave Time must be two times larger than Join Timer; the default is 600 milliseconds.
<code>leaveall &lt;msec&gt;</code> =	This sets the duration of the Leave All Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave All Period timer. Leave All Timer must be larger than Leave Timer; the default is 10000 milliseconds.

This command sets the switch's GARP timer settings, including the join, leave and leave all timers.

Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a Join message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a Leave message. A Leave All message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values.

The following example sets the Join Timer to 300 milliseconds, the Leave Timer to 800 milliseconds and the Leave All Timer to 11000 milliseconds.

```
ras(config)# garp join 300 leave 800 leaveall 11000
```

### 32.4.3 Show GVRP

Syntax:

```
show vlan1q gvrp
```

This command shows the switch's GVRP settings.

An example is shown next.

**Figure 152** show gvrp Command Example

```
ras# show vlan1q gvrp
GVRP Support
-----
gvrpEnable = YES
```

### 32.4.4 Enable GVRP

Syntax:

```
vlan1q gvrp
```

This command turns on GVRP in order to propagate VLAN information beyond the switch.

## 32.4.5 Disable GVRP

Syntax:

```
no vlan1q gvrp
```

This command turns off GVRP so that the switch does not propagate VLAN information to other switches.

## 32.5 Port VLAN Commands

You must configure the switch port VLAN settings in config-interface mode.

### 32.5.1 Set Port VID

Syntax:

```
pvid <VID>
```

where

<VID> = Specifies the VLAN number between 1 and 4094

This command sets the default VLAN ID on the port(s).

The following example sets the default VID to 200 on ports 1 to 5.

**Figure 153** port default vid Command Example

```
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1-5
ras(config-interface)# pvid 200
```

### 32.5.2 Set Acceptable Frame Type

Syntax:

```
frame-type <all|tagged>
```

where

<all|tagged> = Specifies all Ethernet frames (tagged and untagged) or only tagged Ethernet frames.

This command sets the specified port to accept all Ethernet frames or only those with an IEEE 802.1Q VLAN tag.

The following example sets ports 1 to 5 to accept only tagged frames.



**Figure 154** frame type Command Example

```
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1-5
ras(config-interface)# frame-type tagged
```

### 32.5.3 Enable or Disable Port GVRP

Use the `gvrp` command to enable GVRP on the port(s). Use the `no gvrp` command to disable GVRP.

The following example turns off GVRP for ports 1 to 5.

**Figure 155** no gvrp Command Example

```
ras(config)# interface port-channel 1-5
ras(config-interface)# no gvrp
```

### 32.5.4 Modify Static VLAN

Use the following commands in the `config-vlan` mode to configure the static VLAN table.

Syntax:

```
vlan <vlan-id>
fixed <port-list>
forbidden <port-list>
name <name-str>
normal <port-list>
untagged <port-list>
no fixed <port-list>
no forbidden <port-list>
no untagged <port-list>
```

where

<vlan-id> = The VLAN ID [1 – 4094].  
<name-str> = A name to identify the SVLAN entry.  
<port-list> = This is the switch port list.

- Enter `fixed` to register the <port-list> to the static VLAN table with <vlan-id>.
- Enter `normal` to confirm registration of the <port-list> to the static VLAN table with <vlan-id>.
- Enter `forbidden` to block a <port-list> from joining the static VLAN table with <vlan-id>.
- Enter `no fixed` or `no forbidden` to change <port-list> to normal status.
- Enter `untagged` to send outgoing frames without a tag.
- Enter `no untagged` to tag outgoing frames.

### 32.5.4.1 Modify a Static VLAN Table Example

The following example configures ports 1 to 5 as fixed and untagged ports in VLAN 2000.

**Figure 156** Modifying Static VLAN Example

```

ras(config)# vlan 2000
ras(config-vlan)# fixed 1-5
ras(config-vlan)# untagged 1-5

```

### 32.5.4.2 Forwarding Process Example

#### Tagged Frames

- 1 First the switch checks the VLAN ID (VID) of tagged frames or assigns temporary VIDs to untagged frames.
- 2 The switch then checks the VID in a frame's tag against the SVLAN table.
- 3 The switch notes what the SVLAN table says (that is, the SVLAN tells the switch whether or not to forward a frame and if the forwarded frames should have tags).
- 4 Then the switch applies the port filter to finish the forwarding decision. This means that frames may be dropped even if the SVLAN says to forward them. Frames might also be dropped if they are sent to a CPE (customer premises equipment) DSL device that does not accept tagged frames.

#### Untagged Frames

- 1 An untagged frame comes in from the LAN.
- 2 The switch checks the PVID table and assigns a temporary VID of 1.
- 3 The switch ignores the port from which the frame came, because the switch does not send a frame to the port from which it came. The switch also does not forward frames to "forbidden" ports.
- 4 If after looking at the SVLAN, the switch does not have any ports to which it will send the frame, it won't check the port filter.

### 32.5.5 Delete VLAN ID

Syntax:

```
no vlan <vlan-id>
```

where

```
<vlan-id>    The VLAN ID [1 – 4094].
=
```

This command deletes the specified VLAN ID entry from the static VLAN table. The following example deletes entry 2 in the static VLAN table.

**Figure 157** no vlan Command Example

```
ras(config)# no vlan 2
```

## 32.6 Enable VLAN

Syntax:

```
vlan <vlan-id>
```

This command enables the specified VLAN ID in the SVLAN (Static VLAN) table.

## 32.7 Disable VLAN

Syntax:

```
vlan <vlan-id> inactive
```

This command disables the specified VLAN ID in the SVLAN (Static VLAN) table.

## 32.8 Show VLAN Setting

Syntax:

```
show vlan
```

This command shows the IEEE 802.1Q Tagged SVLAN (Static VLAN) table.

An example is shown next.

For the AdCt1 section of the last column, “-“ is a port set to normal, “x” is a forbidden port and “F” is a fixed port.

For the TagCt1 section of the last column, “T“ is a tagged port, “U” is an untagged port.

**Figure 158** show vlan Command Example

```

ras# show vlan

802.1Q VLAN Static Entry:
idx. Name          VID  Active  AdCtl / TagCtl
-----
  0           1    1 active  FFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF
                UUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUU
  1          up1 2000 active  -----F-----
                TTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTT
  2          up1 2001 active  -----F-----
                TTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTUUTT
  3        example    3 active  -----F-----
                TTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTT
ras#

```



# CHAPTER 33

## Troubleshooting

This chapter covers potential problems and possible remedies.

### 33.1 Problems Starting Up the Switch

**Table 78** Troubleshooting the Start-Up of Your Switch

PROBLEM	CORRECTIVE ACTION
None of the LEDs turn on when you turn on the switch.	Check the power connection and make sure the power source is turned on. If the error persists, you may have a hardware problem. In this case, you should contact your vendor.

### 33.2 Problems Accessing the Switch

**Table 79** Troubleshooting Accessing the Switch

PROBLEM	CORRECTIVE ACTION
I cannot access the switch using Telnet.	Make sure the ports are properly connected. You may have exceeded the maximum number of concurrent Telnet sessions. Close other Telnet session(s) or try connecting again later. Check that you have enabled Telnet service access. If you have configured a secured client IP address, your computer's IP address must match it. Refer to the chapter on access control for details.
I cannot access the web configurator.	The administrator username is "admin". The default administrator password is "1234". The username and password are case-sensitive. Make sure that you enter the correct password and username using the proper casing. If you have changed the password and have now forgotten it, you will need to upload the default configuration file. This restores all of the factory defaults including the password. Check that you have enabled web service access. If you have configured a secured client IP address, your computer's IP address must match it. Refer to the chapter on access control for details. Your computer's and the switch's IP addresses must be on the same subnet. See the following section to check that pop-up windows, JavaScripts and Java permissions are allowed.

## 33.2.1 Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device.
- JavaScripts (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

**Note:** Internet Explorer 6 screens are used here. Screens for other Internet Explorer versions may vary.

### 33.2.1.1 Internet Explorer Pop-up Blockers

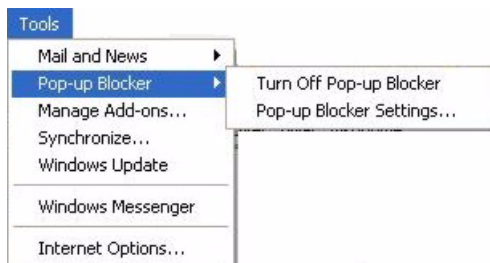
You may have to disable pop-up blocking to log into your device.

Either disable pop-up blocking (enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2) or allow pop-up blocking and create an exception for your device's IP address.

#### 33.2.1.1.1 Disable pop-up Blockers

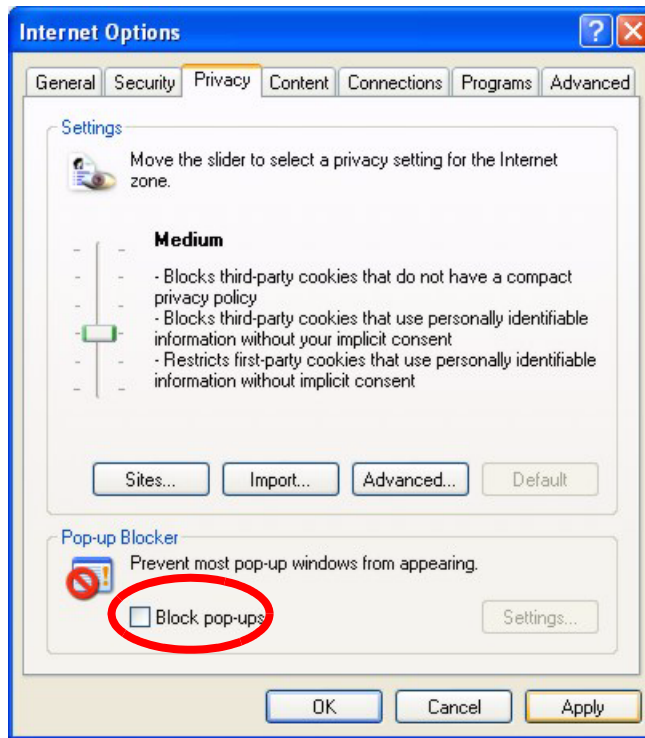
- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Pop-up Blocker** and then select **Turn Off Pop-up Blocker**.

**Figure 159** Pop-up Blocker



You can also check if pop-up blocking is disabled in the **Pop-up Blocker** section in the **Privacy** tab.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Internet Options, Privacy**.
- 2 Clear the **Block pop-ups** check box in the **Pop-up Blocker** section of the screen. This disables any web pop-up blockers you may have enabled.

**Figure 160** Internet Options

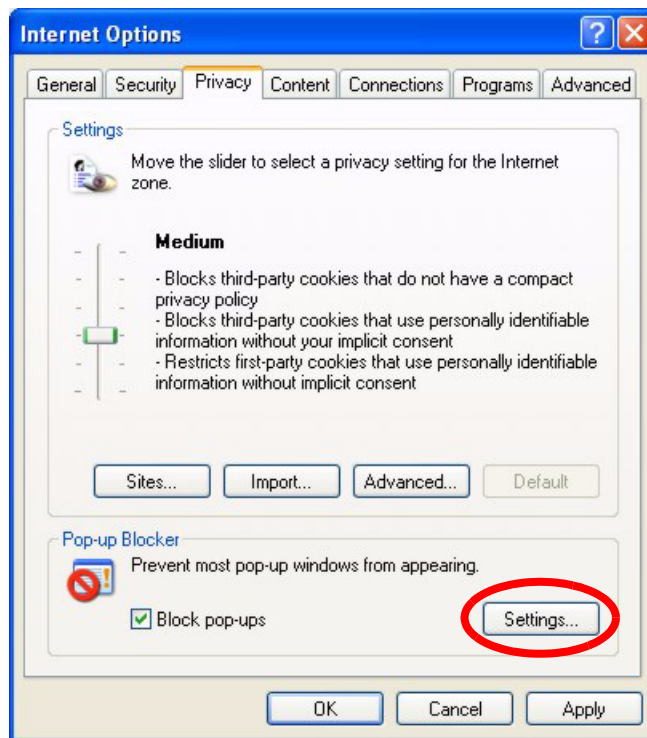
**3** Click **Apply** to save this setting.

#### 33.2.1.1.2 Enable pop-up Blockers with Exceptions

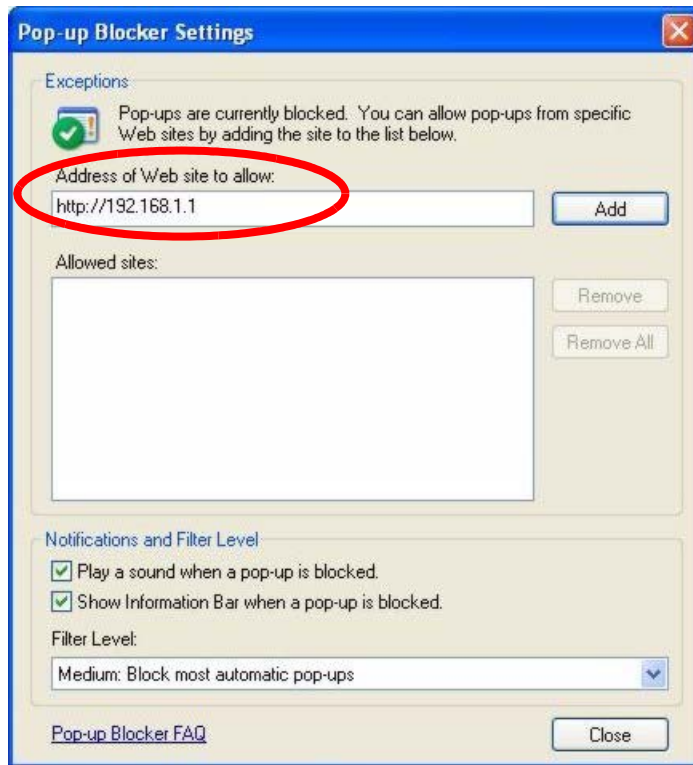
Alternatively, if you only want to allow pop-up windows from your device, see the following steps.

- 1** In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Privacy** tab.
- 2** Select **Settings...** to open the **Pop-up Blocker Settings** screen.



**Figure 161** Internet Options

- 3** Type the IP address of your device (the web page that you do not want to have blocked) with the prefix “http://”. For example, http://192.168.1.1.
- 4** Click **Add** to move the IP address to the list of **Allowed sites**.

**Figure 162** Pop-up Blocker Settings

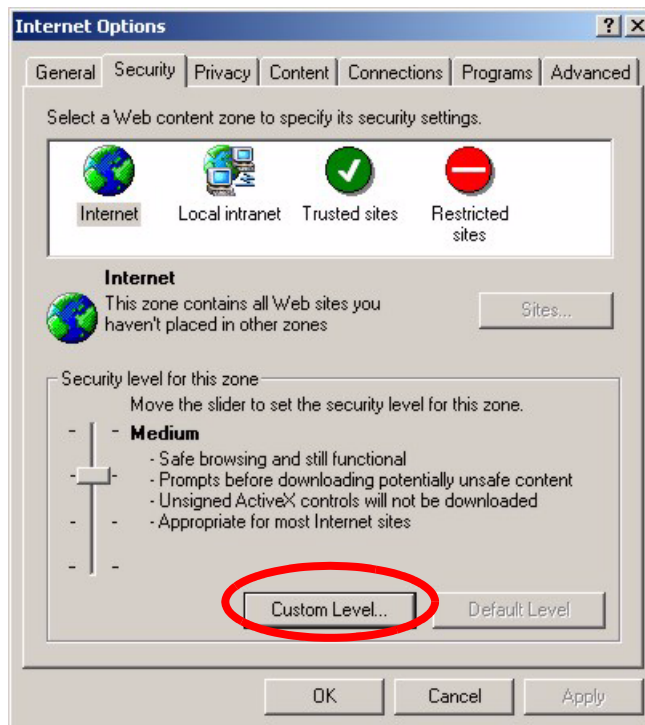
**5** Click **Close** to return to the **Privacy** screen.

**6** Click **Apply** to save this setting.

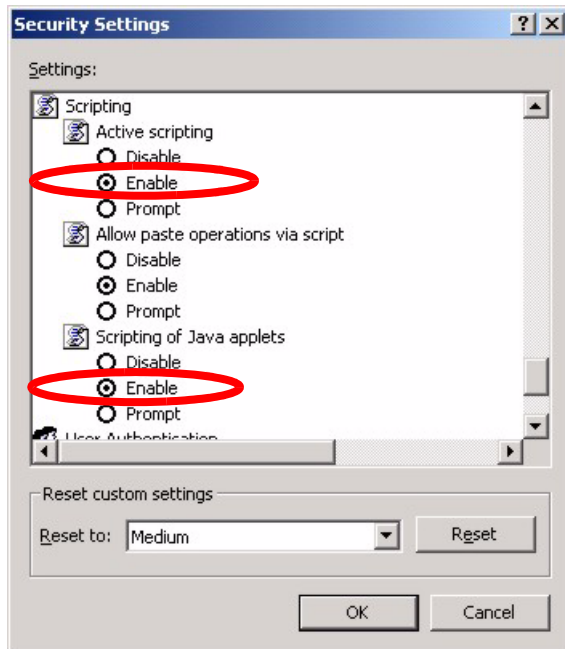
### 33.2.1.2 JavaScripts

If pages of the web configurator do not display properly in Internet Explorer, check that JavaScripts are allowed.

**1** In Internet Explorer, click **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.

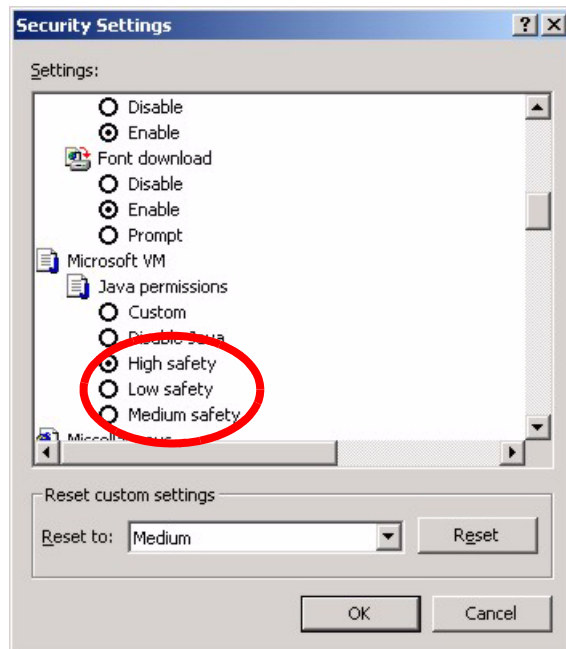
**Figure 163** Internet Options

- 2 Click the **Custom Level...** button.
- 3 Scroll down to **Scripting**.
- 4 Under **Active scripting** make sure that **Enable** is selected (the default).
- 5 Under **Scripting of Java applets** make sure that **Enable** is selected (the default).
- 6 Click **OK** to close the window.

**Figure 164** Security Settings - Java Scripting

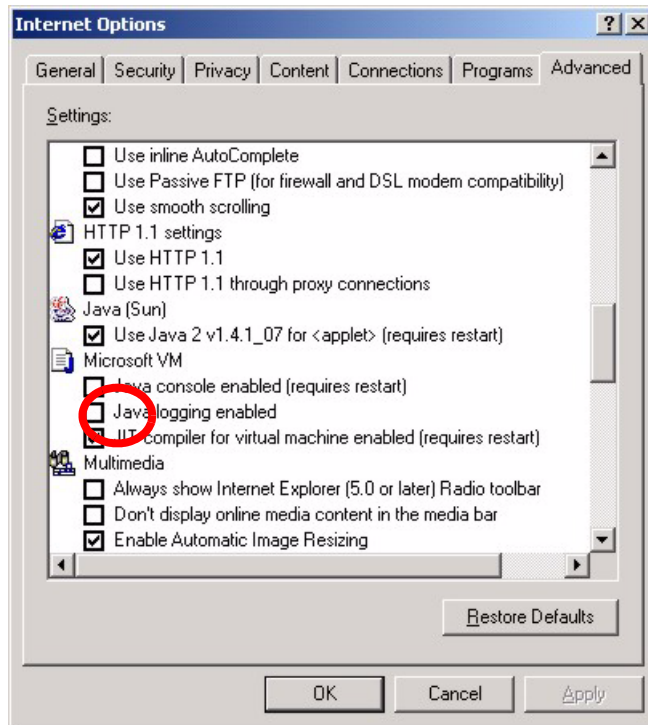
### 33.2.1.3 Java Permissions

- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.
- 2 Click the **Custom Level...** button.
- 3 Scroll down to **Microsoft VM**.
- 4 Under **Java permissions** make sure that a safety level is selected.
- 5 Click **OK** to close the window.

**Figure 165** Security Settings - Java

#### 33.2.1.3.1 JAVA (Sun)

- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Advanced** tab.
- 2 make sure that **Use Java 2 for <applet>** under **Java (Sun)** is selected.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the window.

**Figure 166** Java (Sun)

### 33.3 Problems with the Password

**Table 80** Troubleshooting the Password

PROBLEM	CORRECTIVE ACTION
Cannot access the switch.	The password field is case sensitive. Make sure that you enter the correct password using the proper casing.
	The administrator username is "admin". The default administrator password is "1234". The username and password are case-sensitive. Make sure that you enter the correct password and username using the proper casing. If you have changed the password and have now forgotten it, you will need to upload the default configuration file. This restores all of the factory defaults including the password.



# APPENDIX A

## Product Specifications

These are the GS-3012 and GS-3012F product specifications.

**Table 81** General Product Specifications

Standards	IEEE802.3 10BASE-T Ethernet (twisted-pair copper) IEEE802.3u 100BASE-TX Fast Ethernet (twisted-pair copper) ANSI/IEEE802.3 Auto-negotiation IEEE802.3x Flow Control IEEE802.1p Priority Queues IEEE802.1q VLAN IEEE802.1d Spanning Tree IEEE 802.1x Authentication IEEE 802.3 ad Link Aggregation IEEE 802.1w Rapid reconfiguration
Protocol	CSMA/CD
Interface GS-3012	GS-3012: 12 10/100/1000BASE-T Gigabit ports (with four paired Gigabit/mini GBIC ports) Four mini GBIC slots for uplinking One console port One RJ-45 management port
Interface GS-3012F	GS-3012F: 12 mini GBIC slots for uplinking (with two paired Gigabit/mini GBIC ports) Four 100/1000BASE-T Gigabit ports One console port One RJ-45 management port
Data Transfer Rate	Ethernet (GS-3012): 10Mbps (half duplex), 20Mbps (full duplex) Fast Ethernet: 100Mbps (half duplex), 200Mbps(full duplex) Gigabit: 1000Mbps (half duplex), 2000Mbps (full duplex) Uplink rates depend on the uplink module used (see your module manual).
Network Cables	10BASE-T: 2-pair Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP) Cat.3, 4, 5 (100 meters) EIA/TIA-586 100-ohm Shielded Twisted Pair (STP) (100 meters) 100BASE-TX, 1000BASE-T: UTP Cat.5 (100 m max.) EIA/TIA-568 100-ohm STP (100 m max.) Uplink cables depend on the uplink module used (see your module manual).
Full/Half Duplex	Full/half duplex for 100 Mbps speeds Full duplex 1000 Mbps speed
Media Interface Exchange	All ports are auto-crossover (auto-MDI-X) and auto-negotiating.



**Table 82** Performance and Management Specifications

Back plane	12.8 Gbps
Packet Forwarding Rate	148800 PPS for 100BASE-TX 1488000PPS for 1000Base-X Uplink packet forwarding rate depends on the uplink module used (see your module manual)
Switching Method	Store-and-forward
MAC Address Table	16 K entries
Data Buffer	1MB (excluding optional modules) Uplink data buffers depend on the uplink module used (see your module manual)
VLAN	IEEE 802.1Q tag-based VLAN, 4094 Max
IEEE 802.1p Priority Queues	Eight CoS queues
Port Link Aggregation	Static port trunking IEEE802.3ad dynamic port trunking
Port Security	Static MAC address filtering MAC address learning limit
Multicasting	Support IGMP snooping
Broadcast Storm	Support broadcast storm control
Port Mirroring	All Gigabit and uplink ports support port mirroring
Management	Web-based management Console Telnet SNMP Syslog
Management Security	User ID/Password for console, Telnet and Web-based management authentication Up to four administrators allowed
MIBs	SNMP MIB II (RFC 1213) RFC 1157 SNMP v1 SNMPv2 or SNMPv2c RFC 1643 Ethernet MIBs RFC 1493 Bridge MIBs RFC 1155 SMI RFC 1757 RMON Bridge extension MIBs RFC 2674 RFC 2863 Interface MIB RFC 2925 Ping and Trace Route

**Table 83** Physical and Environmental Specifications

Weight	GS-3012 Main switch: 4Kg GS-3012F Main switch: 3.1Kg
LED	Main switch: PWR, SYS, ALM Per Port: LNK/ACT, FDX (GS-3012) Per Port: 1000, 100 (GS-3012F) Per GBIC Slot: LNK, ACT Per Management Port: 10, 100
Dimensions	Main switch: GS-3012: 438(W) x 300(D) x 45(H) mm GS-3012F: 438(W) x 225(D) x 45(H) mm 19-inch rack-mount width, 1 U height
Power Supply (AC Unit)	100 - 240VAC 50/60Hz 1.5A maximum internal universal power supply
Power Supply (DC Unit)	DC input of -48VDC°—60VDC 1.88A maximum for the GS-3012F 1.2A maximum for the GS-3012F
Power Consumption	GS-3012 AC unit: 50W maximum GS-3012 DC unit: 40W maximum GS-3012F AC unit: 36W maximum GS-3012F DC unit: 30W maximum
Operating Temperature	0°C ~45°C
Storage Temperature	-25°C ~70°C
Operational Humidity	10% to 90% (Non-condensing)
Safety	UL 60950-1 CSA 60950-1 EN60950-1 IEC60950 -1 ITU-T K.2 1 (Version 2000): GS-3012
EMC	FCC Part15 (Class A) CE EMC (Class A)



# APPENDIX B

## IP Subnetting

### IP Addressing

Routers “route” based on the network number. The router that delivers the data packet to the correct destination host uses the host ID.

### IP Classes

An IP address is made up of four octets (eight bits), written in dotted decimal notation, for example, 192.168.1.1. IP addresses are categorized into different classes. The class of an address depends on the value of its first octet.

- Class “A” addresses have a 0 in the left most bit. In a class “A” address the first octet is the network number and the remaining three octets make up the host ID.
- Class “B” addresses have a 1 in the left most bit and a 0 in the next left most bit. In a class “B” address the first two octets make up the network number and the two remaining octets make up the host ID.
- Class “C” addresses begin (starting from the left) with 1 1 0. In a class “C” address the first three octets make up the network number and the last octet is the host ID.
- Class “D” addresses begin with 1 1 1 0. Class “D” addresses are used for multicasting. (There is also a class “E” address. It is reserved for future use.)

**Table 84** Classes of IP Addresses

IP ADDRESS:		OCTET 1	OCTET 2	OCTET 3	OCTET 4
Class A	0	Network number	Host ID	Host ID	Host ID
Class B	10	Network number	Network number	Host ID	Host ID
Class C	110	Network number	Network number	Network number	Host ID

**Note:** Host IDs of all zeros or all ones are not allowed.

Therefore:

A class “C” network (8 host bits) can have  $2^8 - 2$  or 254 hosts.

A class “B” address (16 host bits) can have  $2^{16} - 2$  or 65534 hosts.

A class “A” address (24 host bits) can have  $2^{24} - 2$  hosts (approximately 16 million hosts).

Since the first octet of a class “A” IP address must contain a “0”, the first octet of a class “A” address can have a value of 0 to 127.

Similarly the first octet of a class “B” must begin with “10”, therefore the first octet of a class “B” address has a valid range of 128 to 191. The first octet of a class “C” address begins with “110”, and therefore has a range of 192 to 223.

**Table 85** Allowed IP Address Range By Class

CLASS	ALLOWED RANGE OF FIRST OCTET (BINARY)	ALLOWED RANGE OF FIRST OCTET (DECIMAL)
Class A	00000000 to 01111111	0 to 127
Class B	10000000 to 10111111	128 to 191
Class C	11000000 to 11011111	192 to 223
Class D	11100000 to 11101111	224 to 239

## Subnet Masks

A subnet mask is used to determine which bits are part of the network number, and which bits are part of the host ID (using a logical AND operation). A subnet mask has 32 is a “1” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the network number. If a bit in the subnet mask is “0” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the host ID.

Subnet masks are expressed in dotted decimal notation just as IP addresses are. The “natural” masks for class A, B and C IP addresses are as follows.

**Table 86** “Natural” Masks

CLASS	NATURAL MASK
A	255.0.0.0
B	255.255.0.0
C	255.255.255.0

## Subnetting

With subnetting, the class arrangement of an IP address is ignored. For example, a class C address no longer has to have 24 bits of network number and 8 bits of host ID. With subnetting, some of the host ID bits are converted into network number bits. By convention, subnet masks always consist of a continuous sequence of ones beginning from the left most bit of the mask, followed by a continuous sequence of zeros, for a total number of 32 bits.

Since the mask is always a continuous number of ones beginning from the left, followed by a continuous number of zeros for the remainder of the 32 bit mask, you can simply specify the number of ones instead of writing the value of each octet. This is usually specified by writing a “/” followed by the number of bits in the mask after the address.

For example, 192.1.1.0 /25 is equivalent to saying 192.1.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128.

The following table shows all possible subnet masks for a class “C” address using both notations.

**Table 87** Alternative Subnet Mask Notation

SUBNET MASK IP ADDRESS	SUBNET MASK “1” BITS	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
255.255.255.0	/24	0000 0000
255.255.255.128	/25	1000 0000
255.255.255.192	/26	1100 0000
255.255.255.224	/27	1110 0000
255.255.255.240	/28	1111 0000
255.255.255.248	/29	1111 1000
255.255.255.252	/30	1111 1100

The first mask shown is the class “C” natural mask. Normally if no mask is specified it is understood that the natural mask is being used.

## Example: Two Subnets

As an example, you have a class “C” address 192.168.1.0 with subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.

**Table 88** Two Subnets Example

	NETWORK NUMBER	HOST ID
IP Address	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	00000000
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.	0
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	00000000

The first three octets of the address make up the network number (class “C”). You want to have two separate networks.

Divide the network 192.168.1.0 into two separate subnets by converting one of the host ID bits of the IP address to a network number bit. The “borrowed” host ID bit can be either “0” or “1” thus giving two subnets; 192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 and 192.168.1.128 with mask 255.255.255.128.

**Note:** In the following charts, shaded/bolded last octet bit values indicate host ID bits “borrowed” to form network ID bits. The number of “borrowed” host ID bits determines the number of subnets you can have. The remaining number of host ID bits (after “borrowing”) determines the number of hosts you can have on each subnet.

**Table 89** Subnet 1

	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	<b>00000000</b>
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.	128
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	<b>10000000</b>
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126	

**Table 90** Subnet 2

	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	128
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	<b>10000000</b>
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.	128
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	<b>10000000</b>
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254	

The remaining 7 bits determine the number of hosts each subnet can have. Host IDs of all zeros represent the subnet itself and host IDs of all ones are the broadcast address for that subnet, so the actual number of hosts available on each subnet in the example above is  $2^7 - 2$  or 126 hosts for each subnet.

192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 is the subnet itself, and 192.168.1.127 with mask 255.255.255.128 is the directed broadcast address for the first subnet. Therefore, the lowest IP address that can be assigned to an actual host for the first subnet is 192.168.1.1 and the highest is 192.168.1.126. Similarly the host ID range for the second subnet is 192.168.1.129 to 192.168.1.254.

## Example: Four Subnets

The above example illustrated using a 25-bit subnet mask to divide a class “C” address space into two subnets. Similarly to divide a class “C” address into four subnets, you need to “borrow” two host ID bits to give four possible combinations of 00, 01, 10 and 11. The subnet mask is 26 bits (11111111.11111111.11111111.11000000) or 255.255.255.192. Each subnet contains 6 host ID bits, giving  $2^6-2$  or 62 hosts for each subnet (all 0’s is the subnet itself, all 1’s is the broadcast address on the subnet).

**Table 91** Subnet 1

	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	00000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.63	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.62	

**Table 92** Subnet 2

	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	64
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	01000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.64	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.65	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126	

**Table 93** Subnet 3

	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	128
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	10000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.191	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.190	



**Table 94** Subnet 4

	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	192
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	11000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.192	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.193	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254	

## Example Eight Subnets

Similarly use a 27-bit mask to create 8 subnets (001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110).

The following table shows class C IP address last octet values for each subnet.

**Table 95** Eight Subnets

SUBNET	SUBNET ADDRESS	FIRST ADDRESS	LAST ADDRESS	BROADCAST ADDRESS
1	0	1	30	31
2	32	33	62	63
3	64	65	94	95
4	96	97	126	127
5	128	129	158	159
6	160	161	190	191
7	192	193	222	223
8	224	225	254	255

The following table is a summary for class “C” subnet planning.

**Table 96** Class C Subnet Planning

NO. “BORROWED” HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.255.128 (/25)	2	126
2	255.255.255.192 (/26)	4	62
3	255.255.255.224 (/27)	8	30
4	255.255.255.240 (/28)	16	14
5	255.255.255.248 (/29)	32	6
6	255.255.255.252 (/30)	64	2
7	255.255.255.254 (/31)	128	1

## Subnetting With Class A and Class B Networks.

For class “A” and class “B” addresses the subnet mask also determines which bits are part of the network number and which are part of the host ID.

A class “B” address has two host ID octets available for subnetting and a class “A” address has three host ID octets (see [Table 84 on page 236](#)) available for subnetting.

The following table is a summary for class “B” subnet planning.

**Table 97** Class B Subnet Planning

NO. “BORROWED” HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.128.0 (/17)	2	32766
2	255.255.192.0 (/18)	4	16382
3	255.255.224.0 (/19)	8	8190
4	255.255.240.0 (/20)	16	4094
5	255.255.248.0 (/21)	32	2046
6	255.255.252.0 (/22)	64	1022
7	255.255.254.0 (/23)	128	510
8	255.255.255.0 (/24)	256	254
9	255.255.255.128 (/25)	512	126
10	255.255.255.192 (/26)	1024	62
11	255.255.255.224 (/27)	2048	30
12	255.255.255.240 (/28)	4096	14
13	255.255.255.248 (/29)	8192	6
14	255.255.255.252 (/30)	16384	2
15	255.255.255.254 (/31)	32768	1



# Index

## Numerics

802.1Q VLAN Type [65](#)  
802.3ad [32](#)

## A

Acceptable Frame Type [75](#)  
Access Control [105](#)  
Address Learning [104](#)  
Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) [163](#)  
Aging Time [65](#)  
Airflow [46](#)  
All Connected [79](#)  
ALM [46](#)  
Alternative Subnet Mask Notation [238](#)  
ARP Table [163](#)  
ARP, How it works [163](#)  
authenticationFailure [108](#)  
Auto-crossover [43](#)

## B

Back plane [233](#)  
Backup Configuration [147](#)  
Backup Power Supply (BPS) [45](#)  
Bandwidth Control [32](#)  
Bandwidth Control Setup [89](#)  
Bridge ID [86](#)  
Bridge MIBs RFC 1493 [31](#)  
Bridge Priority [88](#)  
Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) [85](#)  
Broadcast Storm Control [91](#)  
Broadcast storm control [32](#)

## C

Classifier  
View summary [123](#)

Canonical Format Indicator [70](#)  
CFI See Canonical Format Indicator  
Change Login Password [52](#)  
CLI Commands [168](#)  
Class of Service (CoS) [125](#)  
Classifier [120](#)  
Ethernet Type [122](#)  
Example [124](#)  
Packet Format [121](#)  
CLI Command  
Configure tagged VLAN example [213](#)  
Static VLAN Table example [218](#)  
Cluster Management [33](#), [156](#)  
Cluster member switch  
uploading firmware [158](#)  
web management [158](#)  
Clustering Management  
ZyXEL Specifications [156](#)  
Cold Start [107](#)  
Command  
Forwarding Process Example [218](#)  
IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN commands example [212](#)  
Summary [171](#)  
Syntax conventions [168](#)  
Command Line Interface  
Accessing [166](#)  
Introduction [166](#)  
Configure QoS [120](#)  
Configuring STP [87](#)  
Console Port [31](#), [42](#)  
Contact Person's Name [63](#)  
Copyright [2](#)  
Cost to Bridge [86](#)  
Customer Support [6](#)

## D

Data Buffer [233](#)  
Daytime (RFC 867) [63](#)  
Default Ethernet Settings [43](#)  
Destination Lookup Failure (DLF) [91](#)  
DHCP [142](#)  
Diagnostic [152](#)  
DiffServ (Differentiated Services) [125](#)  
DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) [125](#)

DiffServ marking rule [125](#)  
Dimensions [234](#)  
DS field [125](#)  
DS See Differentiated Services  
DVLAN Table [212](#)  
Dynamic Link Aggregation [95](#)

## E

egress port [79](#)  
Error Packet [58](#)  
Ethernet Address [61](#)  
Ethernet MIBs RFC 1643 [31](#)  
Ethernet Port Test [152](#)  
Exposed Power wire length [41](#)

## F

Fans [31](#)  
FCC  
  Compliance [3](#)  
File Transfer using FTP [149](#)  
  command example [149](#)  
  GUI-based [150](#)  
  procedure [150](#)  
  restrictions over WAN [151](#)  
Filename Conventions [149](#)  
Filter Setup [82](#)  
Filtering [82](#)  
  View rules [83](#)  
Filtering database See MAC Table  
Firmware Upgrade [146](#)  
Flow Control [69](#)  
Forwarding Delay [86, 88](#)  
  general rule [88](#)  
Firmware version [61](#)  
Front panel [41](#)  
Front Panel LEDs [46](#)  
FTP [149](#)

## G

GARP [213](#)  
GARP See Generic Attribute Registration Protocol  
garp status [214](#)

GARP Timer [65](#)  
GBIC (Gigabit Interface Converter) [31](#)  
General Setup [60, 62, 63](#)  
Generic Attribute Registration Protocol [71](#)  
Get Community [108](#)  
GetNext [107](#)  
Gigabit Ports [30, 31, 43](#)  
GS-3012 models [26](#)  
GS-3012F models [26](#)  
GVRP [74, 213](#)  
GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) [71, 74, 207](#)  
gvrp disable [216](#)  
gvrp enable [215](#)  
gvrp status [215](#)

## H

Hardware installation [38](#)  
Hardware Monitor  
  Fans [61](#)  
  Temperature [61](#)  
  Temperature unit [61](#)  
  Volatge [62](#)  
Hardware overview [41](#)  
Hello Time [86, 88](#)  
Help [54](#)  
Host IDs [236](#)  
How SSH works [110](#)  
How STP Works [85](#)  
HTML help [26, 27](#)  
HTTPS [111](#)  
HTTPS Example [112](#)

## I

IEEE 802.1p [65](#)  
IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN [212](#)  
IEEE 802.1x [100](#)  
IGMP snooping [32, 131](#)  
Ingress Check [74](#)  
Ingress filtering [71](#)  
Installation  
  Desktop [38](#)  
  Precautions [39](#)  
  Rack-mounting [39](#)  
Installation Scenarios [38](#)  
IP Address [67](#)

IP Addressing [236](#)  
 IP Classes [236](#)  
 IP Ports [124](#)  
 IP Protocols [31](#)  
 IP Setup [60](#), [66](#)  
 IP Subnet Mask [67](#)  
 iStacking [156](#)

## J

Join Timer [65](#)

## L

LACP  
   Timeout [99](#)  
 LACP Status [96](#)  
 Leave All Timer [65](#)  
 Leave Timer [65](#)  
 Link Aggregate Control Protocol (LACP), [95](#)  
 Link aggregation [95](#)  
 Link Aggregation ID [96](#)  
 Link Aggregation Setup [97](#)  
 Link aggregation setup [98](#)  
 linkDown [107](#)  
 Location [63](#)  
 Login Accounts [108](#)

## M

MAC address [61](#)  
 MAC Address Learning [65](#)  
 MAC address learning [32](#), [80](#)  
 MAC Address Table [233](#)  
 MAC Table [161](#)  
 Maintenance [146](#)  
 Management Information Base (MIB) [106](#)  
 Management Port [31](#), [45](#)  
   default IP address [45](#)  
 Max Age [85](#), [86](#), [88](#)  
 MDIX (Media Dependent Interface Crossover) [43](#)  
 Media Access Control [61](#)  
 Media Interface Exchange [232](#)  
 MGNT port [45](#)

MIBs [233](#)  
 Mini GBIC slots [43](#)  
 Monitor port [93](#)  
 Mounting brackets [39](#)  
 MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) [64](#)  
 Multi-tenant unit (MTU) [26](#)

## N

Network Applications  
   Backbone [33](#)  
   Bridging [34](#)  
   High Performance Switched Workgroup [34](#)  
   IEEE802.1Q VLAN Application [35](#)  
   VLAN Server [36](#)  
   VLAN Workgroup [35](#)  
 Network Cables [232](#)  
 NTP (RFC-1305) [63](#)

## O

Operating Temperature [234](#)  
 Operational Humidity [234](#)  
 Out of Profile Action [128](#)  
 Out-of-profile traffic [127](#)

## P

Packet Forwarding Rate [233](#)  
 Password  
   Default [48](#)  
 Path cost [84](#)  
 PHB (Per-Hop Behavior) [125](#)  
 Ping [152](#)  
 Policy  
   Actions [127](#)  
   Example [129](#)  
   Metering [127](#)  
   View summary [128](#)  
 Policy Rules [125](#)  
 POP (point-of-presence) [26](#)  
 Port Based VLAN Type [65](#)  
 Port Details [56](#), [57](#)  
 Port Isolation [79](#)  
 Port Link Aggregation [32](#)  
 Port Mirroring [32](#), [93](#), [190](#), [206](#)

Port Security [103](#)  
Port Setup [68](#)  
Port Statistics See Port Details  
Port Status [55](#)  
Port Status See Port Details  
Port VID [71](#)  
    Default for all ports [70](#), [191](#)  
Port-based VLANs [77](#)  
    Configure [77](#)  
Power Connector [46](#)  
Power Consumption [234](#)  
Power Supply [234](#)  
Priority [65](#)  
Priority Level [65](#)  
Priority Queue Assignment [65](#)  
Product specifications [232](#)  
PVID [74](#)  
PWR [46](#)

## Q

Quality of Service [32](#)  
Quality of Service (QoS) [120](#)  
Queuing [117](#)  
Queuing algorithms [117](#)

## R

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) [100](#)  
ras [149](#)  
Rear Panel [45](#)  
Rear Panel Connections [46](#)  
Reauthentication [102](#)  
Related Documentation [27](#)  
Remote Management [115](#)  
Resetting the Switch [53](#)  
Restore Configuration [147](#)  
Return Material Authorization number (RMA) [5](#)  
Revolutions Per Minute (RPM) [61](#)  
RJ-45 management port [31](#)  
Rom-0 [149](#)  
Root bridge [84](#)  
Round Robin Scheduling [118](#)  
RSTP (Rapid STP) [33](#)  
Rubber feet [38](#)

Runt [58](#)  
Rx KB/s [56](#), [57](#)  
Rx Packet [58](#)  
RxPkts [56](#), [57](#)

## S

Safety [234](#)  
Safety Warnings [41](#)  
Safety warnings [4](#)  
Server Port [115](#)  
Service Access Control [115](#)  
Set Community [108](#)  
Shared Secret [101](#)  
Simple Network Management Protocol [106](#)  
Small Form-factor Pluggable (SFP) [44](#)  
SMI RFC 1155 [31](#)  
SNMP [106](#)  
    Configuring [108](#)  
        Trap [108](#)  
    Get [107](#)  
    Manager [106](#)  
    MIBs [107](#)  
        supported versions [106](#)  
    Trap [107](#)  
SNMP MIB II (RFC 1213) [31](#)  
SNMP Traps [107](#)  
SNMP v1 RFC 1157 [31](#)  
SNMPv2, SNMPv2c RFC 2674 [32](#)  
Source MAC Address [83](#)  
Spanning Tree Protocol [84](#)  
Speed/Duplex [69](#)  
SSH [110](#)  
SSH Implementation [111](#)  
Standards [232](#)  
Static MAC Forward Setup [80](#)  
Static MAC Forwarding [80](#)  
Static Route  
    Setup [144](#)  
Static VLAN [75](#)  
    Control [76](#)  
    Tagging [76](#)  
Status [55](#)  
STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) [33](#)  
STP Path Costs [84](#)  
STP Port States [85](#)  
STP See Spanning Tree Protocol  
STP Status [85](#)  
STP Terminology [84](#)

Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ) [117](#)  
 Subnet Masks [237](#)  
 Subnetting [237](#)  
 SVLAN Table [212](#)  
 Switch Lockout [52](#)  
 Switch Setup [64, 72](#)  
 Switching Method [233](#)  
 Synchronized Ports [97](#)  
 Syntax Conventions [26](#)  
 SYS [46](#)  
 sys Commands  
     examples [193, 201](#)  
 sys log disp [195, 201](#)  
 sys sw mac list [196](#)  
 Syslog [153](#)  
 System Information [55, 60](#)  
 System Log [152](#)  
 System Monitoring [32](#)  
 System Name [63](#)  
 System Priority [98](#)  
 System Statistics [55](#)  
 System up Time [56](#)

**T**

Tag Control Information [70](#)  
 Tag Protocol Identifier [70](#)  
 Tagged VLAN [70](#)  
     GARP [71](#)  
     GVRP [71](#)  
     Membership Registration [71](#)  
 TCI See Tag Control Information  
 TCP/UDP protocol port numbers [122](#)  
 Terminal Emulation [42](#)  
 Terminal emulation [42](#)  
 Time (RFC-868) [63](#)  
 Time server protocol supported [63](#)  
 TPID See Tag Protocol Identifier  
 Transceiver Installation [44](#)  
 Transceiver MultiSource Agreement (MSA) [44](#)  
 Transceiver Removal [44](#)  
 Trap [108](#)  
 Trunking See Link aggregation  
 trusted computers [115](#)  
 TX Collision [58](#)  
 Tx KB/s [56, 57](#)  
 Tx Packet [58](#)  
 TxPkts [56, 57](#)

**U**

Up Time [56](#)  
 Username  
     Default [48](#)

**V**

ventilation [38](#)  
 Ventilation holes [39](#)  
 VID [73, 83](#)  
 VID See VLAN Identifier  
 VLAN [70](#)  
     Explicit Tagging [212](#)  
     Forwarding [70](#)  
     ID (VID) [213](#)  
     Implicit Tagging [212](#)  
     Introduction [64](#)  
     Port-based [77](#)  
     Priority frame [70](#)  
     Registration Information [212](#)  
     Tagged VLAN [70](#)  
 VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) [64](#)  
 VLAN Administrative Control [71](#)  
 VLAN Databases [212](#)  
 VLAN Group [76](#)  
 VLAN ID [67, 70](#)  
     maximum number of [70](#)  
 VLAN Identifier [70](#)  
 VLAN Port Settings [74](#)  
 VLAN Status [73](#)  
 VLAN Tag Control [71](#)  
 VLAN Type [65, 72](#)  
 vlan1q port accept [216](#)  
 vlan1q port gvrp [217](#)  
 vlan1q svlan active [219](#)  
 vlan1q svlan delentry [218](#)  
 vlan1q svlan inactive [219](#)  
 vlan1q svlan list [219](#)  
 vlan1q svlan setentry [217](#)  
 VT100 [42](#)

**W**

WarmStart [107](#)  
 Warnings [41](#)  
 Web Configurator



Logging out [54](#)

Login [48](#)

Online help [54](#)

Recommended browsers [48](#)

Weighted Round Robin Scheduling [118](#)

WRR See Weighted Round Robin Scheduling

## **X**

XMODEM upload [53](#)

## **Z**

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) [149](#)

ZyNOS Firmware version [61](#)

ZyXEL Limited Warranty

Note [5](#)

ZyXEL Web Site [27](#)